



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

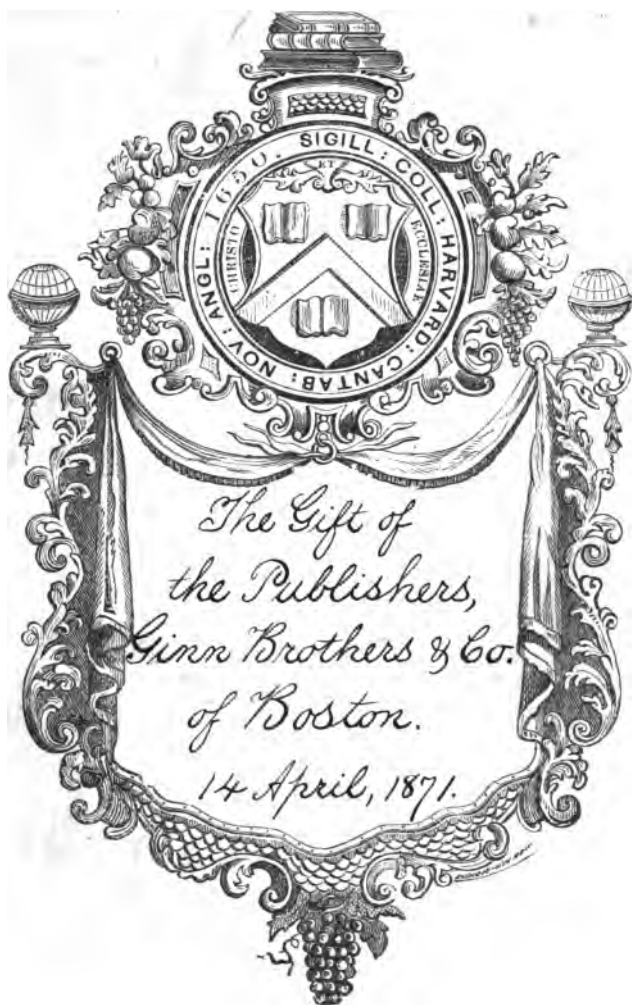
We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

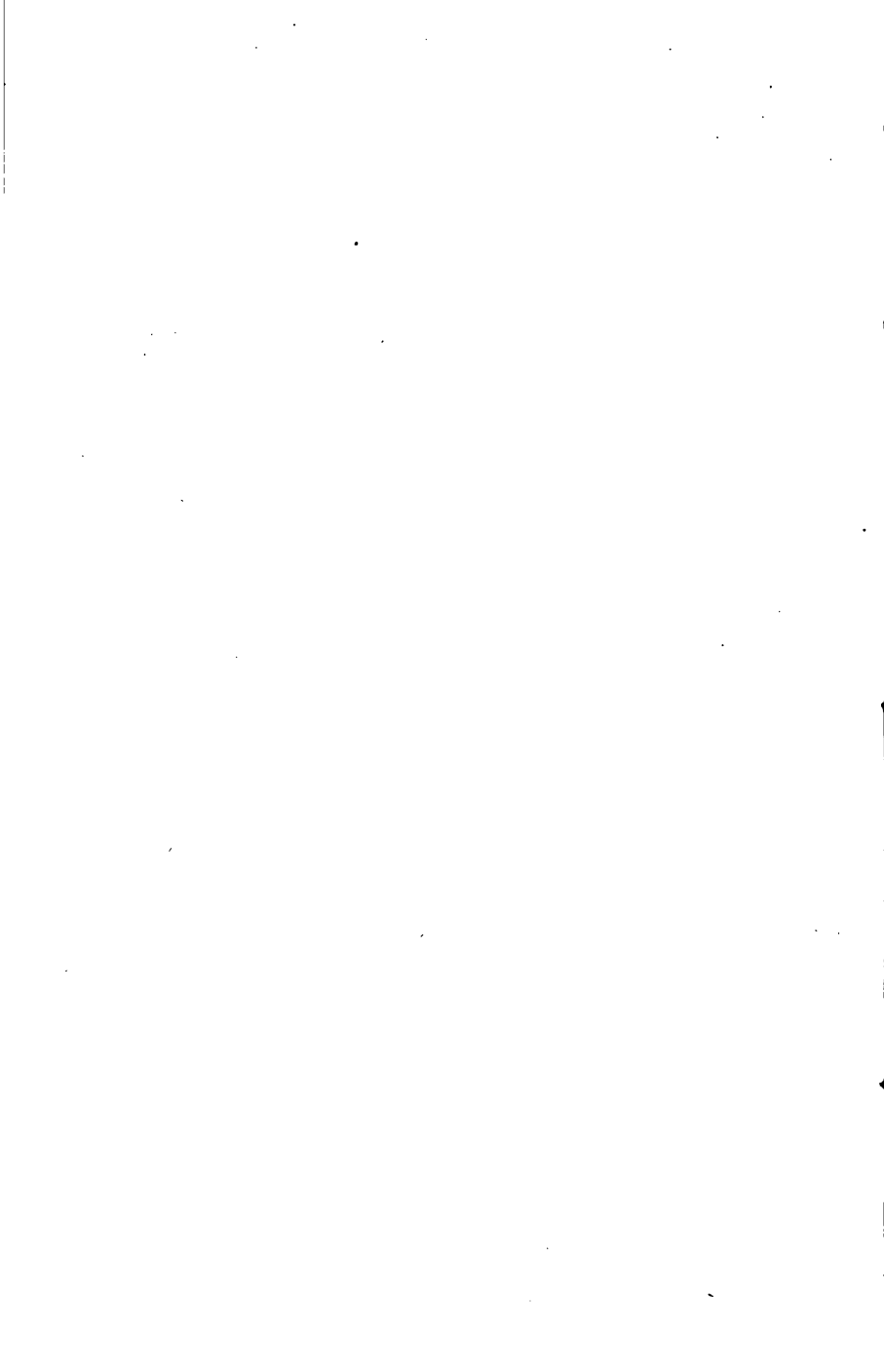
Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

18.70.141





3 2044 097 054 993



MANUAL LATIN GRAMMAR.



MANUAL

LATIN GRAMMAR.

PREPARED BY

Francis
WILLIAM F. ALLEN, A.M.,

PROFESSOR OF ANCIENT LANGUAGES AND HISTORY IN THE
UNIVERSITY OF WISCONSIN;

AND
Kinney
JOSEPH H. ALLEN,

CAMBRIDGE, MASS.

FIFTEENTH THOUSAND.

BOSTON:
PUBLISHED BY GINN BROTHERS & CO.,
13 BEACON STREET.

1870.

Feb. 7 1868. 10. 141

~~5254, 29~~
~~Educt 918. 68. 7~~

1871 April 14

Gift of the Librarian

Entered, according to Act of Congress, in the year 1868, by

J. H. AND W. F. ALLEN,

In the Clerk's Office of the District Court of the United States for
the District of Massachusetts.

CAMBRIDGE:

PRESS OF JOHN WILSON AND SON.

NOTE TO THE FIFTH EDITION.

SINCE the first edition of this Grammar was published, it has been introduced in numerous schools and classes requiring a more elementary treatment, and a fuller exhibition of paradigms, than those for which it was originally designed. Several teachers, indeed, of experience and skill, have found our condensed forms of inflection amply sufficient, even for beginners, — preferring to exercise the judgment and intelligence of the pupil in the construction of other forms on the model of these, as part of the business of the class-room; and considering that in this way *more of the language itself is learned*, and more accurately, than by the mere exercise of verbal memory. But, for the convenience of those who adopt a different method, very full Tables of Inflection have been inserted — which can be used or not, according to the teacher's choice — distinguished by a different type and marginal rule, and carefully accented, so as to facilitate their pronunciation by the common or English method. These Tables have enabled us, by relieving our pages here and there, to expand our treatment of several points where it seemed desirable; and, at the same time, to introduce considerable new material, which will be found convenient for reference.

In the Supplement we have set forth, with some fulness, for the use of teachers, the method of Instruction, and the principles of Classification by Vowel and Consonant Stems, which we have had in view in the preparation of this Manual.

CAMBRIDGE, July, 1869.

PREFACE.

MANY of the best friends of classical education have long desired a manual of elementary instruction in Latin grammar,—which lies at the foundation of a classical course,—full and accurate enough to be a practical guide to the learner, but avoiding the prodigious multiplication of details, which have so overgrown that study in our ordinary school textbooks.

In attempting to meet this want, we have been guided by the following principles:—

1. To admit only what is likely to be really useful information to the learner, and nothing which he will be likely to look for in the dictionary first.

2. To avoid, as far as possible, all subtleties of theory and technicalities of phrase; and to illustrate every point, as it is stated, by examples in correct Latin, uniformly rendered into the corresponding English idiom.

3. To aid the eye, by the typography and arrangement of the page, so as to make it an easy manual of reference. Every Latin word we have used is printed

in a special type, cast expressly for this book, and is followed immediately (except in the section on Prosody), by its English equivalent, *italicized*. The quantities of roots and inflections are abundantly given throughout. In orthography, we have followed the most approved editions of the present day, adopting a few forms which may possibly be regarded as innovations, but varying less than some might desire from the past usage of our text-books.

In the classification and arrangement of paradigms we have expended a great deal of care. The classification of Nouns of the Third Declension, — which is based partly on that of Key, — seems to us to have great advantages over that commonly adopted. The exhibition of the Verb-forms will be found not only a material help to the learner by its compactness, clearness, and easiness of reference; but to have the special benefit of keeping distinctly in view the point (which teachers so often fail to make familiar) that all irregularities, or peculiarities of conjugation, are confined to the forms from the first or Present stem, while the others follow one uniform model throughout.

This volume is not, in any sense, an abridgment or compilation from previous writers. Except in some details of Prosody, we have not been *directly* indebted to any of those in use in our schools. Our plan has grown from our own wants and experience; and the examples have been selected, in general, from our

own reading. Only in a few instances, where it seemed desirable for completeness, we have not hesitated to borrow them from other sources.

While we have omitted a great amount of matter which we think serves in many text-books merely to obscure to the learner the outlines of the language, it will be found that its leading forms and usages are very fully exhibited ; at the same time much incidental illustration is given, not contained in any other school grammar within our knowledge. A book designed for reference, as a full treatise on etymology and syntax, very properly contains much material which would be out of place in a brief manual like the present. We do not believe that it is best for the learner to begin with as large a book as he may require afterwards ; and besides, if principles are to be taught, and not dead rules, it is a clear advantage not to become wedded to any set form of words.

Two or three points seem to require brief explanation to teachers who have been in the habit of using the ordinary text-books.

First, the recognition of the Locative Case, which has been sometimes called the "Dative of Place." The fact we wish to recognize in the structure of the language is one which all grammarians admit ; and to accept it will be to many persons a real relief from the old arbitrary and unintelligible rule.

In interpreting the Subjunctive, we have thought best to give it no separate translation in the paradigms.

To render it, as is often done, by the English Potential, is as misleading as any false step, so low down among the elements, can well be. We have accordingly illustrated its use, at the outset, by a score of select examples of Latin idiom ; and trust in the Syntax to have made it as clear as is consistent with the brevity of our plan.

In simplifying the treatment of the Gerund and Gerundive, we have followed the best English authorities, from Milton's brief Latin "Accedence," to the works of Donaldson, Key, and D'Arcy Thompson. The phrase "Nominative of the Gerund," which we have employed, is easily understood ; it suggests an explanation of the subject which many scholars prefer to that usually given ; and it need not be taken as controverting the more common doctrine, that the form in question is the Neuter of the Future Passive Participle, used impersonally.

The Syntax of the Moods will be found relatively more full than other parts of the book ; this we have thought warranted by the difficulty and peculiar obscurity of the subject. In general, we have not, as is usually done, treated the Subjunctive by itself ; but have classified the usages in the different kinds of subordinate clauses, in nearly all of which either that or the Indicative may be employed in special relations. Here, as everywhere, we have derived constant assistance from Madvig's "*Lateinische Sprachlehre*," the best single treatise upon Latin grammar with

which we are acquainted: from this we have taken more special points than from all other sources combined. We are far from claiming an entirely satisfactory treatment of the Subjunctive, which indeed has never yet been adequately analyzed, and which is much more difficult in Latin than in Greek. Conditional Sentences, however, in which we have followed the doctrine of Goodwin's "Greek Moods and Tenses," we believe will be found nowhere more fully explained than here.

In the matter of Prosody, we have given enough to enable the student to analyze for himself, and to read easily into metre, all the forms of verse in Virgil, Ovid, Horace, and (excepting a few lyrical passages) most of those in the Dramatic writers. For the rules and illustrations of quantity in Latin words, — omitting numerous Greek forms, — this grammar will be found, we believe, as full and accurate as any other.

In many points, both of etymology and syntax, we have availed ourselves of the counsel and guidance of Professor LANE, of Harvard University; who has greatly aided us by his care in examining all of the proof-sheets, and by the suggestions of his very exact and thorough scholarship. In points of practical adaptation to the wants of classes, the long experience of our brother, Rev. T. P. ALLEN, of West Newton, Mass., has been a valuable guide. In the preparation of the Syntax, we are under especial obligation to Professor

J. B. FEULING, of the University of Wisconsin, who kindly read over the whole manuscript of this portion, and made many valuable suggestions.

In addition we would say, that, while this is intended to be a sufficient text-book for the learner, — at least until some more copious systematic treatise is required during a college course, — it is not claimed to be sufficient for the teacher. For his daily use in the class-room, as well as for his own more accurate information, he needs the ampler material so industriously gathered in the many excellent manuals in use. But, for ever so short a course in classical instruction, we hold that the language itself, and the literature which contains it, is the real object of study ; and that every hour spent on the details of grammar, which does not directly help to this, is an injury to the student's progress, and a wrong to his intelligence.

Finally, this book is not meant for children. For most learners, we think, it would be better to wait till at least thirteen or fourteen, before attempting the systematic study of so difficult a tongue. At that age, an intelligent boy or girl, who studies it at all, ought to be led at once to those forms of it which can be readily understood and enjoyed.

CAMBRIDGE, MASSACHUSETTS.

August, 1868.

CONTENTS.

PART I.—FORMS OF WORDS. (ETYMOLOGY.)

SECT.	PAGE
1. Alphabet	1
2. Pronunciation	2
3. Quantity	2
4. Accent	3
5. Inflection	3
6. Gender	4
7. Case	4
8. Declension	5

NOUNS.

9. First Declension	6
10. Second Declension	7
11. Third Declension. I. Vowel Stems	8
II. Liquid Stems	9
III. Mute Stems	9
IV. Rules of Gender	11
12. Fourth Declension	11
13. Fifth Declension	12
14. Irregular Nouns. I. Defective	12
II. Variable	13
15. Proper Names	13

SECT.	ADJECTIVES.	PAGE
16.	Inflection. I. First and Second Declension	14
	II. Third Declension	15
17.	Comparison	15
18.	Numerals. I. Cardinal and Ordinal	18
	II. Distributive	19

PRONOUNS.

19.	Personal and Reflective	20
20.	Demonstrative	21
21.	Relative, Interrogative and Indefinite	22
22.	Correlatives	23

VERBS.

23.	Structure	24
24.	Moods	24
25.	Participles	26
26.	Gerund and Supine	27
27.	Tenses	28
28.	Personal Endings	30
29.	Esse	30
	abesse, adesse, posse, prodesse	32
30.	Conjugation	32
31.	Active Voice	34
32.	Passive Voice	36
33.	Rules of Conjugation	38
34.	Forms of Conjugation	39
35.	Deponent Verbs	40
36.	Derivative Verbs	41
37.	Irregular Verbs	41
	volo, nolo, malo	41
	fero, edo, eo, facio, queo	42
38.	Defective Verbs, coepi, aio, inquam, fari, salve, &c.	43
39.	Impersonal Verbs	43
40.	Periphrastic Forms	44
41.	Adverbs	44
42.	Prepositions	46
43.	Conjunctions	47
44.	Formation of Words	50

PART II.—USE OF WORDS. (SYNTAX.)

SECT.	PAGE
45. Definitions	53

I. RULES OF AGREEMENT.

46. Of Nouns	53
47. Of Adjectives	54
48. Of Relatives	57
49. Of Verbs	58

II. RULES OF GOVERNMENT.

50. Genitive	59
51. Dative	63
52. Accusative	66
53. Vocative	68
54. Ablative	69
55. Time and Place	73
56. Prepositions	75

III. SYNTAX OF THE VERB.

57. Sequence of Tenses	77
58. Moods	80
59. Conditional Sentences	81
60. Implied Conditions	84
61. Conditional Particles	85
62. Relations of Time	86
63. Cause or Reason	87
64. Purpose	88
65. Consequence or Result	89
66. Intermediate Clauses	90
67. Oratio Obliqua	91
68. Wishes and Commands	95
69. Subjunctive with Relatives	96
70. Substantive Clauses	96
71. Questions	98
72. Participles	99
73. Gerund and Gerundive	99
74. Supine	101
75. General Rules of Syntax	102
76. Arrangement	103

PART III.—RULES OF VERSE. (PROSODY.)

SECT.	PAGE
77. Rhythm	105
78. Quantity. I. General Rules	105
II. Final Syllables	106
III. Penultimate Syllables	108
79. Feet	111
80. Scanning	113
81. Metre	114
82. Forms of Verse	115
<hr/>	
83. Reckoning of Time	119
84. Reckoning of Money	119
85. Roman Prænomens	120

SUPPLEMENT.

ON THE METHOD OF TEACHING LATIN.

I. Preliminary Instruction	121
II. Definitions	122
III. Pronunciation	125

PRINCIPLES OF INFLECTION AND CLASSIFICATION.

I. Roots and Stems	129
II. Classification of Nouns	130
III. Agreement	133
IV. Inflection of Verbs	135

ON SOME PECULIAR CONSTRUCTIONS IN LATIN.

I. Idioms	136
II. Substantive Clauses	136

LATIN GRAMMAR.

PART FIRST.

FORMS OF WORDS. (ETYMOLOGY.)

1. ALPHABET.

THE Latin Alphabet is the same as the English, wanting **w**.

Vowels are **a, e, i, o, u, y**. Diphthongs are **ae, oe** (often written **æ, œ**), **au, eu**, and in poetry **ei** and **ui**.

Mute Consonants are **p, b, f, v** (labial); **t, d** (lingual); **c (k), g** (palatal). Liquids are **l, m, n, r**. Double Consonants are **x (cs), z (ds)**. But **m** may be classed as labial.

The Aspirate, **h**, is merely a silent breathing, and is not reckoned as a Consonant.

The earlier Alphabet consisted of 21 letters, viz.,

a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, k, l, m, n, o, p, q, r, s, t, u, x.

y and **z** were added, in words derived from Greek.

i and **u**, when used as consonants (having the sound of **y** and **w**), are generally written **j** and **v**: as, *juvenis*, a youth, for *ijuvenis*.

k is used only in a few words, generally at the beginning, and is always followed by **a**.

c is usually written for **k**; and often for **qu**, (regularly when followed by **u**): as in *cum* (for *quum*) *when*; *secutus* (for *sequutus*) *having followed*; and, more rarely, in *ecus* (for *equus*) *a horse*, *ootidie* (for *quotidie*) *daily*, and others.

In early use, *u* never follows *u* (*v*), but *o* instead: as in *volt*, *will*. Often, *i* is put for *il*, or *jl*, as in *obit*, *died*; *obicit*, *cast*. Examples of variation in spelling are, -*undus* or -*endus* in gerund forms; -*umus* or *imus* in superlatives; *adolescens*, *youth*, *epistula*, *letter*, for *adolescens*, *epistola*; *cena*, *caena*, *coena*, *supper*.

The last letter of the Prepositions *ab*, *ad*, *con* (*cum*), *ex*, *in* and *sub*, when combined with other words, is often altered to give an even sound: as *ad-* or *al-latus*, *brought*, *in-* or *im-mensus*, *boundless*; *sub-* or *suf-fero*, *sustain*.

The verb *est*, *is*, is sometimes joined in spelling with the previous word, especially in the old poets, or when the two would be united by elision: as *homost*, *he is a man*, *periculumst*, *there is danger*. So *vin'*, *will?* *scin'*, *know'st?* for *visne*, *scisne*.

In the division of syllables, a consonant between two vowels is always written with the latter; as *do-mi-nus*, *master*: also, any combination of consonants which can be used to begin a word; as *ho-spes*, *guest*; *ma-gnus*, *great* (except compounds, as *ob-it*).

2. PRONUNCIATION.

Among us, Latin is generally pronounced like English. But there are *no silent letters*, except in scanning verse, by the usage called elision. (§ 80.)

c and *g* are made *soft* before *e*, *i*, *y*, and the diphthongs *ae*, *eu*, *oe*; *ch* is always like *k*; *es* and (in plural) *os*, final, are pronounced as in *disease*, *morose*. (See Supp. pp. 123–128).

The Roman pronunciation of the Vowels was no doubt like the Italian. In English, for the long and short vowels respectively, it may be nearly represented thus:—

a as in *father*, *fast*; *e* as in *rein*, *met*; *i* as in *machine*, *fill*; *o* as in *holy*, *wholly*; *u* as in *rude*, *full*.

c and *g* were probably always sounded hard.

3. QUANTITY.

1. A vowel before another vowel is short; as, *vīa*, *way*.
2. A diphthong is long; as, *fōedus*, *league*.
3. A syllable formed by contraction is long; as, *nīl*, *nothing*, for *nīhl*.

4. A vowel before two consonants or a double consonant is long, as *rēctus*, *straight*, *judēx*, *juror*: but a short vowel before a mute followed by *l* or *r*, is common, as in *volūcris*, *bird*; that is, it may be long in verse.

The sign *ˉ* denotes that a vowel is long; *˘* that it is short.

A short vowel differs from a long one not in *sound* but in *length*; as in *pātēr*, *father*, *mātēr*, *mother*. (See §§ 77, 79).

4. ACCENT.

Words of two syllables are always accented on the Penult; as, *ē'rant*, *they were*.

Words of more than two syllables are accented on the Penult, if that is long; as, *amī'cus*, *friend*: if it is short, or common, then on the Antepenult; as, *dō'minūs*, *master*; *a'lacris*, *eager*. But *ī* in *-ius* has the accent.

The Penult is the last syllable but one; the Antepenult, the last but two (*paene*, *almost*; *ultima*, *last*; *ante*, *before*).

5. INFLECTION.

1. Inflection is a change made in the ending of a word to express some change in meaning; as, *vōc o*, *I call*; *vōc āt*, *he calls*.

2. That part of the word which remains unchanged is called the Root, or Stem. When a primitive form, common to Latin with other languages, it is always called the Root: thus the root of *fūg a*, *flight*, is found in the English *fugitive*.

3. In Latin, Nouns, Adjectives, Pronouns, Participles, are inflected to express Declension (gender, number, and case); Adjectives and Adverbs to express Comparison; Verbs to express Conjugation (voice, mood, tense, number, and person).

4. Those parts of speech which are not inflected are called Particles: they are, Prepositions, Conjunctions, and Interjections. Adverbs, especially those of time, place, and manner, are also sometimes reckoned as Particles.

6. GENDER.

1. Gender may be either natural, as **pŭēr**, *boy*; **puellā**, *girl*; **mālum**, *apple*: or grammatical, as **lāpīs**, *stone* (masc.); **mānŭs**, *hand* (fem.).

2. The following are general rules of gender:—

Names of Rivers (except a few ending in a) are masculine: as, **Tāmēsis**, *the Thames*; **Rhōdānus**, *the Rhone*.

Most names of Plants are feminine: as, **cornus**, *cornel*.

Indeclinable nouns, or Phrases used as nouns, are neuter; as, **illud Cassiānum**, "**Cui bōnō fuērīt**," *that saying of Cassius*, "*For whose advantage it was.*"

3. Many Nouns may be either masculine or feminine, according to sex; as, **exsŭl**, *exile*; **bōs**, *ox*, *cow*. They are said to be of Common Gender (if things without life, Doubtful).

4. A few are always connected with adjectives in the same gender, either masculine or feminine, independent of sex; thus, **ansēr**, *goose*, is always masculine, and **vulpēs**, *fox*, feminine. They are called Epicene.

7. CASE.

There are in Latin six Cases; namely,—

1. **NOMINATIVE**, used as the subject of a direct proposition: as, **pātēr meŭs ādest**, *my father is here*.

2. **GENITIVE** (*of*), generally denoting origin or possession; also used with many adjectives and verbs, especially those expressing emotion: as,

patrīs ejŭs āmicŭs mīserētŭr mei, *his father's friend pities me*.

3. **DATIVE** (*to* or *for*), generally used for the indirect object, or for the person whose interest is concerned: as,

dēdit mīhi cultellum: magnō mīhi ūsui ērāt; *he gave me a pocket-knife; it was of great service to me*.

4. **ACCUSATIVE** (*towards*), used as the direct object of a verb, and after most prepositions: as,

dum agrum ārābāt in hortum vēnī, *while he was ploughing the field, I came into the garden*.

5. VOCATIVE, used in direct address: *as*,
hūc vēnī, cārē mī filiōlē, come hither, my dear little son.

6. ABLATIVE (*by, from, with*), used with many verbs and prepositions, especially to express instrument or separation: *as*,
in hortō lūdēbāmūs, et cultellō mē laesīt, we were playing in the garden, and he hurt me with a knife.

All, excepting the nominative and vocative, are often called Oblique cases.

7. Some grammarians reckon also a Locative case, signifying the *place where*: it is generally the same in form with the Dative, and may be called the Dative of Place (§ 55, III. 3): *as*,
Rōmae vēl Athēnis essē vēlim, I should like to be at Rome or Athens.

8. DECLENSION.

I. There are five Declensions of nouns in Latin, distinguished by the termination of the Genitive Singular, and by their characteristic or leading Vowel. These are as follows:—

DECL. 1.	Gen. Sing. ae,	Leading Vowel a
„ 2.	„ ī (ius)	„ o
„ 3.	„ is	„ i
„ 4.	„ ūs	„ u
„ 5.	„ ēi	„ e

II. The following are general rules of declension:—

1. The vocative is always the same in form with the nominative, except in the singular of nouns in *us*, of the second declension.

2. In Neuters, the nominative and accusative are always alike, and in the plural end in *ā*.

3. Except in neuters, the accusative singular always ends in *m*, and the accusative plural in *s*.

4. In the most ancient form, the dative singular of all the declensions ends in *ī*; in the third declension, the locative case may end in *ē* or *ī*.

5. The dative and ablative plural are always alike.

6. The genitive plural always ends in *um*.

NOUNS.

9. FIRST DECLENSION. (a.)

SINGULAR.

NOMINATIVE.	stell ā,	<i>a star.</i>
GENITIVE.	stell ae,	<i>of a star.</i>
DATIVE.	stell ae,	<i>to a star.</i>
ACCUSATIVE.	stell ām,	<i>a star.</i>
VOCATIVE.	stell ā,	<i>thou star!</i>
ABLATIVE.	stell ā,	<i>with a star.</i>

PLURAL.

NOMINATIVE.	stell ae,	<i>stars.</i>
GENITIVE.	stell ārūm,	<i>of stars.</i>
DATIVE.	stell is,	<i>to stars.</i>
ACCUSATIVE.	stell ās,	<i>stars.</i>
VOCATIVE.	stell ae,	<i>ye stars!</i>
ABLATIVE.	stell is,	<i>with stars.</i>

1. Most nouns of the first declension are feminine.

2. The genitive and dative singular anciently ended in *āi*, which is occasionally found in a few words, as, *aulāi*, *of a hall*. There is also an old genitive in *ās*, found in *paterfamilias*.

3. The genitive plural, especially of compounds with *cōla* and *gēna*, signifying *dwelling* and *descent*, is sometimes contracted into *ūm*: as, *caelīcōlūm*, *of the heavenly ones*.

4. The dative and ablative plural of *dea*, *goddess*, *filia*, *daughter*, and a few others, end in the old regular form *ābūs*.

5. Some Greek nouns end in *ās*, *ēs* (masc.), and *ē* (fem.) in the nominative, and *n* in the accusative; those in *e* have the genitive in *es*: as, *Aenēās*, acc. *Aenēān*, voc. *Aenēā*; *Anchises*, gen. *Anchisae*, acc. *Anchisen*, voc. *Anchisē*; *Pēnēlōpē*, *Penelōpēs*, *Penelopēn*; *grammaticēs* or *grammaticā*, *grammar*.

10. SECOND DECLENSION. (o.)

MOST nouns of the second declension ending in *ūs* (ōs), *ēr*, *īr*, are masculine; those ending in *ūm* (ōn) are neuter.

SINGULAR.

	<i>Man.</i>	<i>Book.</i>	<i>Slave.</i>	<i>War.</i>
Nom.	<i>vīr</i>	<i>libēr</i>	<i>servūs</i> (ōs)	<i>bellūm</i>
Gen.	<i>vīrī</i>	<i>librī</i>	<i>servī</i>	<i>bellī</i>
Dat.	<i>virō</i>	<i>librō</i>	<i>servō</i>	<i>bellō</i>
Acc.	<i>virūm</i>	<i>librūm</i>	<i>servūm</i> (om)	<i>bellūm</i>
Voc.	<i>vir</i>	<i>liber</i>	<i>servē</i>	<i>bellūm</i>
Abl.	<i>virō</i>	<i>librō</i>	<i>servō</i>	<i>bellō</i>

PLURAL.

Nom.	<i>virī</i>	<i>librī</i>	<i>servī</i>	<i>bellā</i>
Gen.	<i>virōrūm</i> (ūm)	<i>librōrūm</i>	<i>servōrūm</i>	<i>bellōrūm</i>
Dat.	<i>virīs</i>	<i>librīs</i>	<i>servīs</i>	<i>bellīs</i>
Acc.	<i>virōs</i>	<i>librōs</i>	<i>servōs</i>	<i>bellā</i>
Voc.	<i>virī</i>	<i>librī</i>	<i>servī</i>	<i>bellā</i>
Abl.	<i>virīs</i>	<i>librīs</i>	<i>servīs</i>	<i>bellīs</i>

1. Some Greek words end in *ōs* (M.) or *ōn* (N.); as, *arctos*, the *Polar Bear*; *barbīton*, *lyre*. The old form *ōs*, *ōn*, for *ūs*, *um*, after *u* or *v*, as in *servōs*, and the gen. pl. *ōn*, are sometimes found.

2. Names of towns in *us* (os) are feminine: as, *Cōrinthus*. Also, *alvus*, *belly*; *cōlus*, *distaff*; *hūmus*, *ground*; *vannus*, *winnowing-shovel*; with most names of plants.

3. The locative singular ends in *i*: as, *Cōrinthi*, at *Corinth*.

4. The genitive of nouns in *ius* and *ium* is often written with a single *i*: as *filī*, of a son, *ingē'nī*, of *genius*.

5. Proper names in *ius* drop *e* in the vocative; as, *Vergīlius*, voc. *Vergī'li*: also *filius*, son, and *genius*, *divine guardian*.

6. In the gen. plur. *ōrūm* is often contracted into *um* or *om*.

7. *Deus*, *God*, has voc. *deus*; plural, n. v. *dei*, *dii*, or *di*; dat. abl. *deis*, *dīs*, *dīs*. For the genitive plural, *dīvum* or *dīvom* is often used.

8. Nouns in *er* generally drop *e* in declining, as in *agēr*, *agri*, *field*: but retain it in *pūēr*, *boy*; *gēnēr*, *son-in-law*; *sōcēr*, *father-in-law*; *vespēr*, *evening*; and compounds in *-fer* and *-ger*.

9. *Vulgus*, *mob*; *pēlāgus*, *sea*; and *vīrus*, *poison*, are neuter.

10. Many Greek names, as *Orpheus*, have acc. *-ea*, and voc.

11. THIRD DECLENSION.

NOUNS of the third declension are classed according to their stems, whether ending in a Vowel, a Liquid, or a Mute Consonant. (See Supplement, pp. 129–133).

I. VOWEL STEMS. (1)

	<i>Ship</i> (r.)	<i>Cloud</i> (r.)	<i>Sea</i> (n.)
SING. N.	<i>nāvīs</i>	<i>nūbēs</i>	<i>mārē</i>
G.	<i>nāvīs</i>	<i>nubīs</i>	<i>maris</i>
D.	<i>navī</i>	<i>nubī</i>	<i>marī</i>
Ac.	<i>navēm</i> (īm)	<i>nubem</i>	<i>mare</i>
V.	<i>navīs</i>	<i>nubes</i>	<i>mare</i>
Ab.	<i>navē</i> (ī)	<i>nube</i>	<i>marī</i>
PLU. N.	<i>navēs</i>	<i>nubes</i>	<i>marīā</i>
G.	<i>naviūm</i>	<i>nubium</i>	<i>marium</i>
D.	<i>navībūs</i>	<i>nubibus</i>	<i>maribus</i>
Ac.	<i>navēs</i> (īs)	<i>nubes</i> (īs)	<i>maria</i>
V.	<i>navēs</i>	<i>nubes</i>	<i>maria</i>
Ab.	<i>navībūs</i>	<i>nubibus</i>	<i>maribus</i>

NOTE. — The stem-vowel *i* is dropped before *e* in declension.

1. A few nouns in *āl* and *ār* are properly neuters of adjectives in *ālis*, *āris*, (omitting final *e*), and belong to this class. They are declined like *mare*: as, *ānīm āl*, *ālis*, pl. *anim alia*, *living thing* (from *anima*, *breath*); *caloār, āris, spur* (from *calx*, *heel*). Here also belong *imber*, *linter*, *titer*, *venter* (m.).

2. The old forms of sing. acc. in *īm*, and abl. in *ī*, and of the plur. acc. in *īs*, are found in many words. In Adjectives of this class the nom. sing. *īs* and abl. *ī* are always used. (T. 2, 3, 4, 5).

3. Several names of towns, as *Praenestē*, *Caerē*, and the mountain *Soracte* (n.), have the ablative *ē*. Sometimes, also, *marē*, *sea*, and *rētē*, *net*, in verse.

4. A few nouns, as *cānis*, *dog*, *jūvēnis*, *youth*, have the genitive plural in *um*. (T. 2, 6.)

5. *Vīs*, *force*, has acc. *vim*, abl. *vī*, plur. *vīrēs*, *virium*, *virībūs*, *strength*.

6. Greek names in *is*, as *Alexis*, have the acc. *im* or *in*, voc. *ī*. Some in *es* have forms of the 1st or 2d declension: as, *Achilles*, gen. *ei* or *i*, dat. *i*, acc. *ea*, voc. *e*, abl. *i*; *Xerxes*, acc. *Xerxen*.

II. LIQUID STEMS.

In nouns whose stem ends in a Liquid (**l, n, r**), the nominative is the same as the stem, sometimes with a change of vowel, as: —

	SING. <i>Honor</i> (M.)	PLUR.	SING. <i>Name</i> (N.)	PLUR.
NOM.	hōnōr (ōs)	honōr es	nōmēn	nomīn a
GEN.	honōr is	honor um	nomīn is	nomin um
DAT.	honor i	honor ibus	nomin i	nomin ibus
ACC.	honor em	honor es	nomen	nomin a
VOC.	honor	honor es	nomen	nomīn a
ABL.	honor e	honor ibus	nomin e	nomin ibus

1. Masc. and fem. stems in **n** drop **n** in the nominative: as, **leo**, **leōnis**, *lion*; **ordo**, **ordīnis**, *rank*.

2. Neuter stems in **ēr, ōr**, have the nom. in **īs**: as, **corpus**, **corpōris**, *body*; **opus**, **opēris**, *work*. Those in **mīn** change **i** to **ē**: as, **carmen**, **carminis**, *song*.

3. Stems in **ter**, with a few in **ber**, drop **e** in declension: as, **pāter**, **patris**, *father* (but **lāter**, **latēris**, *brick*).

4. Most feminines of liquid stems end in **do**, **go**, gen. **-īnis**; or in **to**, gen. **-ōnis**: as, **arundo**, **arundinis**, *reed*; **virgo**, **virginis**, *maiden*; **occāsio**, **occasiōnis**, *opportunity*.

III. MUTE STEMS.

Nouns whose stem ends in a Mute generally form the nominative by adding **s**. If the stem ends in two consonants, the genitive plural generally has **ium**.

1. If the mute is a Labial (**b, p**), **s** is added simply, with or without change of vowel, as: —

	SING. <i>City</i> (F.)	PLUR.	SING. <i>Chief</i> (M.)	PLUR.
NOM.	urb s	urb es	princep s	princīp es
GEN.	urb is	urb ium	princīp is	princip um
DAT.	urb i	urb ibus	princip i	princip ibus
ACC.	urb em	urb es	princip em	princip es
VOC.	urb s	urb es	princep s	princip es
ABL.	urb e	urb ibus	princip e	princip ibus

Hiems (**hiemps**), **hiēmis**, *winter*, is declined like **princeps**: it is the only noun whose stem ends in **m**.

2. If the mute is a Lingual (*d, t*), it is suppressed before *s* ; in neuters, *s* is not added : as,

	SING. <i>Companion</i> (M.) PLUR.			SING. <i>Poem</i> (N.) PLUR.	
NOM.	<i>cōmēs</i>	<i>comītes</i>		<i>poēma</i>	<i>poemāta</i>
GEN.	<i>comītis</i>	<i>comitum</i>		<i>poemātis</i>	<i>poematum</i>
DAT.	<i>comiti</i>	<i>comitibus</i>		<i>poemati</i>	<i>poematis</i>
ACC.	<i>comitem</i>	<i>comites</i>		<i>poema</i>	<i>poemata</i>
VOC.	<i>comes</i>	<i>comites</i>		<i>poema</i>	<i>poemata</i>
ABL.	<i>comite</i>	<i>comitibus</i>		<i>poemate</i>	<i>poematis</i>

Names in *as*, denoting birth or residence (patrials), — as *Urbīnas*, of *Urbīnum*, — with a few others, have the gen. plural *-ium*.

3. If the mute is a Palatal (*c, g*), it unites with *s* in *x* : as,

	SING. <i>King</i> (M.) PLUR.			SING. <i>Peak</i> (M.) PLUR.			Throat (F.)	
NOM.	<i>rex</i>	<i>rēges</i>		<i>āpex</i>	<i>apīces</i>		<i>faucē</i>	<i>fauces</i>
GEN.	<i>rēgis</i>	<i>regum</i>		<i>apīcis</i>	<i>apicum</i>		<i>faucium</i>	
DAT.	<i>regi</i>	<i>regibus</i>		<i>apīci</i>	<i>apicibus</i>		<i>faucibus</i>	
ACC.	<i>regem</i>	<i>reges</i>		<i>apicem</i>	<i>apices</i>		<i>faucē</i>	<i>fauces</i>
VOC.	<i>rex</i>	<i>reges</i>		<i>apex</i>	<i>apices</i>		<i>faucē</i>	<i>fauces</i>
ABL.	<i>rege</i>	<i>regibus</i>		<i>apice</i>	<i>apicibus</i>		<i>faucibus</i>	

4. Peculiar forms are the following : —

bōs, ox, *cow*, gen. *bōvis* ; plur. gen. *boum*, dat. *bōbus* or *būbus*.
cāro (F.), *flesh*, has *carnis* ; *sēnex*, old man, has *sēnis*.
cīnis, ashes, *pulvis*, dust, *vōmis*, ploughshare (M.), have gen. *-ēris*.
fēl, gall, and *mēl*, honey (N.), have the gen. *fellis*, *mellis*.
hērēs, heir, *mercēs* (F.), pay, have *-ēdis* ; *pēs* (M.) foot, *pēdis*.
itēr (N.), journey, has *itīnēris* ; *cāput* (N.), head, has *capitis*.
jēcūr (N.), liver, has *jecōris*, or *jecīnōris* ; *hēpar* has *hepātis*.
lāc (N.), milk, has gen. *lactis* ; *alec*, brine, has *alēcis*.
nox (F.), night, has gen. *noctis* ; *nix* (F.), snow, has *nīvis*.
ōs (N.), mouth, has *ōris* ; *ōs* (N.) bone, *ossis* ; *cor*, heart (N.) *cordis*.
pēcus (N.), cattle, has gen. *-ōris* ; *pēcus* (F.), a sheep, has *-ūdis*.
sūpellez (F.), furniture, has *supellectilis* ; *jus* (N.), right, *jūris*.
Juppiter (Jupiter) has gen. *Jōvis*.

Some Greek nouns have gen. sing. *-os* ; acc. *-a* or *-n* ; pl. nom. *-ēs* ; acc. *ās* : as, *lampas*, torch, *lampādīs* (*os*), *lampādem* (*a*), *lampadēs*, *lampadās*. Those in *ys* have the acc. sing. *yn*.

Several Greek names in *o* (feminine) have gen. sing. *-ūs*, and belong more properly to the fourth declension ; the other cases end in *o* ; as, *Dido*, *Didūs* (or *-ōnis*), *Dido*, etc.

IV. RULES OF GENDER.

Masculine endings are *o*, *or*, *os*, *er*, *es* (lingual).

Feminine endings are *as*, *es* (vowel-stems), *is*, *ys*, *x*, *s* (following a consonant); also *do*, *go*, *io*, and *ūs* (increasing long).

Neuter endings are *a*, *e*, *i*, *y*; *c*, *l*, *n*, *t*; *ar*, *ur*, *ūs* (increasing short).

The most important exceptions are:—

MASC. — *amnis*, river; *as*, *as*; *axis*, axle; *caulis*, stalk; *collis*, hill; *crinis*, hair; *ensis*, sword; *fascis*, bundle; †*finis*, end; *fornix*, arch; †*fūnis*, rope; *ignis*, fire; *lāpis*, stone; *orbis*, circle; *mānes*, the shades; *mensis*, month; *pānis*, bread; *piscis*, fish; *postis*, post; †*pulvis*, dust; *sanguis*, blood; *sentis*, brier; *unguis*, nail; *vepres*, bramble; *sāl*, salt; *sōl*, sun; *ordo*, order; *dens*, tooth; *fons*, fountain; *mons*, mountain; *pons*, bridge; *rūdens*, cable; †*calx*, heel, lime; †*cortex*, bark; *grex*, herd; *silex*, flint; *cardo*, hinge; and names of material objects in *io*.

FEM. — *arbor*, tree; *cāro*, flesh; *halcyon*, kingfisher; *compes*, fetter; *mercēs*, reward; *mergēs*, sheaf; *quiēs*, rest; *sēgēs*, crop; *tēgēs*, mat; *cōs*, whetstone; *dōs*, dowry; *ēōs*, dawn.

NEUT. — *ācer*, maple; *cādāver*, corpse; *īter*, journey; *pāpāver*, poppy; *ūber*, udder; *vēr*, spring; *verber*, scourge; *aequor*, plain; *cor*, heart; *marmor*, marble; *aes*, copper.

12. FOURTH DECLENSION. (U.)

	SING. <i>Car</i> (M.)	PLUR.	SING. <i>Knee</i> (N.)	PLUR.
NOM.	curr ūs	curr ūs	gēn u	gen uā
GEN.	curr ūs (uis)	curr uum	gen u (ūs)	gen uum
DAT.	curr ui (ū)	curr ibus	gen u	gen ibus
ACC.	curr um	curr ūs	gen u	gen ua
VOC.	curr us	curr us	gen u	gen ua
ABL.	curr u	curr ibus	gen u	gen ibus

1. Nouns in *us* are masculine: but *ācus*, needle; *ōlus*, distaff; *dōmus*, house; *ficus*, fig; *īdus*, the Ides; *mānus*, hand; *porticus*, gallery; *trībus*, tribe, are feminine.

2. *Dōmus*, house, has abl. sing. *domo*; plural, gen., *domorum* or *domuum*; acc. *domos*; *domi*, less frequently *domui* (locative), means *at home*.

3. The following have the dat. and abl. plural in *ibus*: *artus*, limb; *partus*, birth; †*portus*, harbor; *trībus*, tribe; †*vērū*, spit; with nouns in *cus*: *as*, *lācus*, lake.

4. Most nouns of the fourth declension are formed from the Supine stem of verbs: *as*, *cantus*, song (*cāno*).

† Sometimes.

13. FIFTH DECLENSION (e).

The only complete nouns of this declension are *dies*, *day*, and *res*, *thing*. All, except *dies*, are feminine.

	SING.	Thing (F.)	PLUR.	Poverty.
NOM.	rēs		rēs	paupēri ēs
GEN.	rēi		rērum	pauperi ēi
DAT.	rēi		rēbus	pauperi ēi
ACC.	rem		res	pauperi em
VOC.	res		res	pauperi es
ABL.	re		rebus	pauperi ē

1. Most nouns of the Fifth Declension want the plural.
2. *Dies*, *day*, is sometimes feminine in the singular, especially in phrases indicating a fixed time: as, *constitutā die*, *on the set day*.
3. The termination of the nominative singular is always *ies*, except in *fides*, *faith*; *plēbes*, *commonalty*; *res*, *thing*; *spes*, *hope*.

14. IRREGULAR NOUNS.

1. Wanting the Singular: as, *libēri*, *children*; *arma*, *weapons*; *pēnātes*, *household gods*.
So the names of Festivals: as, *Sāturnālia*, *Feast of Saturn*; *Quinquātrus* (gen. -uum), *of Minerva*. Also, many names of towns: as, *Vēii*, *Syracūsae*, *Ecbātāna*.
2. Wanting the nominative: as, *dāpis*, *of food*; *frūgis*, *of fruit* (plural complete).
3. Found only in one or two cases: as, *fors*, *forte*, *chance*; *vīcis* (gen.), *vicem*, *vice*, *vices*, *vicibus*, *change or turn*; *sponte* (*suā sponte*, *of his own accord*); *injussu*, *without orders*; *fauce*, *jaw* (pl. complete).
4. Indeclinable (neuters): as, *fās*, *right*; *nēfās*, *wrong*; *pondō*, *pound*.
5. Some nouns have two or more forms of declension, and are called *Heteroclites*: as, *margārita*, -ae (F.), or um, -i (N.), *a pearl*. This occurs with several of the fifth declension: as, *māteries*, -ēi; a, -ae, *material*: *saevities*, -ēi; *saevitia*, -ae; *saevitūdo*, -inis, *cruelty*.

II. VARIABLE.

1. Many nouns vary in meaning as they are found in the singular or plural; some also in gender (*heterogeneous*): as,

aedes, *is* (F.), *temple*.

auxilium (N.), *help*.

carcer (M.), *dungeon*.

castrum (N.), *fort*.

cōpia (F.), *plenty*.

finis (M.), *end*.

grātia (F.), *favor*.

impēdimentum (N.), *hinderance*.

littēra (F.), *letter* (of alphabet).

lōcus (M.), *place* [pl. *loca* (N.)].

ōpis (F. gen.), *help*.

plāga (F.), *region* [plāga, *blow*].

sāl (M. or N.), *salt*.

aedes, *ium*, *house*.

auxilia, *auxiliaries*.

carcēres, *barriers* (of a race-

castra, *camp*. [course.]

copiae, *troops*.

fines, *bounds*, *territory*.

gratiae, *thanks*.

impedimenta, *baggage*.

litterae, *epistle*.

loci, *passages in books*.

opes, *resources*, *wealth*.

plāgae, *snare*s.

sāles, *witticisms*.

sestertius (M.) means the sum of 2½ *asses*, = about 4 cents.

sestertium (N.) means the sum of 1000 *sestertii*, = about \$40.

decies sestertium means the sum of 1000 *sestertia*, = \$40,000.

2. Sometimes a noun in combination with an adjective takes a special signification, both parts being regularly inflected: as,

jusjūrandum, **jūrisjurandi**, *oath*.

respublica, **reipublicae**, *commonwealth*.

15. PROPER NAMES.

A Roman had regularly three names. Thus, in the name Marcus Tullius Cicero, we have —

Marcus, the *praenōmen*, or personal name;

Tullius, the *nomen*; i.e., name of the Gens, or house, whose original head was **Tullus**; this name is an adjective;

Cicero, the *cognomen*, or family name, often in its origin a nickname, — in this case from *cicer*, a *vetch*, or small pea.

Women had no personal names, but were known only by that of their gens. Thus the wife of Cicero was Terentia, and his daughter Tullia. A younger sister would have been called Tullia secunda (or minor), and so on.

Names of the Months are Adjectives in Latin.

Table 1.
INFLECTION OF NOUNS.

1. *Vowel Stems.*

Sing. I.		II.		III.		IV.		V.					
Wing, F.		Grandfather, M.		Boar, M.		Bird, F.		Bag, M.		Lake, M.		Day, M.	
N.	a'la	a'vus	a'per	a'vis	u'ter	a'cus	la'cus	di'es					
G.	a'læ	a'vi	a'pri	a'vis	u'tris	la'cus	la'cus	di'e'i					
D.	a'læ	a'vo	a'pro	a'vi	u'tri	la'cu	la'cu	di'e'i					
A.	a'lam	a'vum	a'prum	a'vem	u'trem	la'cum	la'cum	di'em					
V.	a'la	a've	a'per	a'vis	u'ter	la'cus	la'cus	di'es					
A.	a'la	a'vo	a'pro	a've	u'tre	la'cu	la'cu	di'e					
Plur.													
N.	a'læ	a'vi	a'pri	a'ves	u'tres	la'cus	la'cus	di'es					
G.	ala'rum	avo'rum	apro'rum	a'vium	u'trium	la'uum	la'uum	di'e'rum					
D.	a'lis	a'vis	a'pris	a'ibus	u'tribus	la'ubus	la'ubus	di'e'bus					
A.	a'las	a'vos	a'pros	a'ves (is)	u'tres (is)	la'cus	la'cus	di'es					
V.	a'læ	a'vi	a'pri	a'ves	u'tres	la'cus	la'cus	di'es					
A.	a'lis	a'vis	a'pris	a'ibus	u'tribus	la'ubus	la'ubus	di'e'bus					
Sing. I.		II.		III.		IV.							
Comet, M.		Cave, N.		Nak. N.		Spur, N.		Horn, N.					
N.	come'tes	an'trum	re'te	cal'car	cor'nu								
G.	come'tæ	an'tri	re'tis	calca'ris	cor'nu (us)								
D.	come'tæ	an'tro	re'ti	calca'ri	cor'nu								
A.	come'ten	an'trum	re'te	cal'car	cor'nu								
V.	come'ta	an'trum	re'te	cal'car	cor'nu								
A.	come'ta	an'tro	re'ti	calca'ri	cor'nu								
Plur.													
N.	come'tes	an'tra	re'tia	calca'ria	cor'nua								
G.	cometa'rum	antro'rum	re'tium	calca'rium	cor'nuum								
D.	come'tis	an'tris	re'tibus	calcar'ibus	cor'nibus								
A.	come'tas	an'tra	re'tia	calca'ria	cor'nua								
V.	come'tæ	an'tra	re'tia	calca'ria	cor'nua								
A.	come'tis	an'tris	re'tibus	calcar'ibus	cor'nibus								

2. *Consonant Stems.*

<i>Sing.</i> <i>Consul, M.</i>	<i>Lion, M.</i>	<i>Father, M.</i>	<i>Tree, F.</i>	<i>Maiden, F.</i>	<i>Burden, N.</i>
N. con'sul	le'o	pa'ter	ar'bor	vir'go	o'nus
G. con'sulis	leo'nis	pa'tris	ar'boris	vir'ginis	on'eris
D. con'suli	leo'ni	pa'tri	ar'bori	vir'gini	on'eri
A. con'sulem	leo'nem	pa'trem	ar'borem	vir'ginem	o'nus
V. con'sul	le'o	pa'ter	ar'bor	vir'go	o'nus
A. con'sule	leo'ne	pa'tre	ar'bore	vir'gine	on'ere
<i>Plur.</i>					
N. con'sules	leo'nes	pa'tres	ar'bores	vir'gines	on'era
G. con'sulum	leo'num	pa'trum	ar'borum	vir'ginum	on'erum
D. consu'libus	leon'ibus	pa'tribus	ar'boribus	vir'ginibus	on'eribus
A. con'sules	leo'nes	pa'tres	ar'bores	vir'gines	on'era
V. con'sules	leo'nes	pa'tres	ar'bores	vir'gines	on'era
A. consu'libus	leon'ibus	pa'tribus	ar'boribus	vir'ginibus	on'eribus
<i>Sing.</i> <i>Beam, F.</i>	<i>Wealth, F.</i>	<i>Age, F.</i>	<i>Art, F.</i>	<i>Light, F.</i>	<i>Journey, N.</i>
N. tra'bs	(ops)	æ'tas	ars	lux	i'ter
G. tra'bis	o'pis	æ'tatis	ar'tis	lu'cis	itin'eris
D. tra'bi	o'pi	æ'tati	ar'ti	lu'ci	itin'eri
A. tra'bem	o'pem	æ'tatem	ar'tem	lu'cem	i'ter
V. tra'bs	(ops)	æ'tas	ars	lux	i'ter
A. tra'be	o'pe	æ'tate	ar'te	lu'ce	itin'ere
<i>Plur.</i>					
N. tra'bes	o'pes	æ'tates	ar'tes	lu'ces	itin'era
G. tra'bium	o'pum	æ'tatum	ar'tium	lu'cum	itin'erum
D. tra'bibus	op'ibus	ætati'bus	ar'tibus	lu'cibus	itin'eribus
A. tra'bes	o'pes	æ'tates	ar'tes	lu'ces	itin'era
V. tra'bes	o'pes	æ'tates	ar'tes	lu'ces	itin'era
A. tra'bibus	op'ibus	ætati'bus	ar'tibus	lu'cibus	itin'eribus

Table 2.

TERMINATIONS OF NOUNS.

DECL. I. (a)	II. (o)	III. (i)	IV. (u)	V. (e)
N. a, ē, as, es	us, ōs, eus, um, ōn	s, &c. (See § 11, IV.).	us, u ō	es
G. ae (ai), es	i (ius), ei o	is, ōs	us (uis) &s	ei (e)
D. ae (ai)	o (i) ei	i	ui (u) o	ei (e)
A. am, an, en	um, on, ea	em (im), in yn ō	um o	em
V. a, e	e (i), en	(as nom.) i y	us o	es
A. a, e	o	e (i), i	u o	e
<i>Plural.</i>				
N. V. ae	i a	es, a, is	us, ua	es
G. arum (um)	orum (um, om), ōn	um, ium	uum	erum
D. A. is (abus)	is (obus)	ibus	ibus (ubus)	ebus
A. as	os, a	es (is), a, ia ōs	us, ua	es

1. Unusual forms are in parenthesis; Greek forms in *Italics*.
2. In the Second Declension, when the stem ends in *er, ir*, the terminations of the nom. and voc. singular are not added.
3. In vowel-stems of the Third Declension, the characteristic vowel (i) is in several of the cases absorbed in the termination; but it remains in the gen. pl. *ium*, and in some words in the acc. and abl. sing. *im, i*, and the acc. plur. *is (eis)*.
4. The accusative *im* and abl. *i* are found in names of rivers in *is*; also in *āmussis*, † *āquālis*, *būris*, *cannābis*, † *olāvis*, † *febris*, *mēphitis*, † *messia*, † *nāvis*, *pelvis*, *praesēpis*, † *puppis*, *rāvis*, † *restis*, *sēcūris*, † *sēmentis*, *altis*, † *strīgīlis*, † *turris*, *tusis*, *vis*.
5. The following also have the abl. sometimes in *i*: *amnis*, *civis*, *finis*, *fustis*, *ignis*, *imber*, *orbis*.
6. The gen. plur. *ium* is found (rarely with acc. pl. in *is*), in—
 - a. Vowel-stems, including neuters in *al* and *ar*, and the masculines *imber*, *linter*, *ūter*, *venter*:—except *āpis*, *cānis*, *fōris*, *jūvēnis*, *mūgīlis*, *prōles*, *strīgīlis*, *strues*, *vātes*, and *vōlucris*, and occasionally a few others, which have *um*;
 - b. Mute-stems ending in two consonants, except some in *nt*;
 - c. Local names (adjectives) in *as*, as *nostras*, of our country; also *Quīris*, *Sannis*, *Penātes*, *optīmātes*, and sometimes other nouns in *as*, as *aetas*, *civitas*;
 - d. And the following:—*dos*, *fauces*, † *fraus*, † *fur*, *glis*, † *laris*, *mas*, † *mus*, *nix*, † *ren*, *strix*, *trabs*, *vis*.
7. Nouns in *io*, abstract and collective,—as *rātio*, *reason*; *lēgio*, *legion*,—are feminine. The following, denoting material objects, are masculine:—*curotlio*, *weevil*; *pāpilio* *butterfly*; *pūgio*, *dagger*; *scipio*, *staff*; *septemtrio*, *the north*; *stellio*, *lizard*; *struthio*, *ostrich*; *tilio*, *firebrand*; *unio*, *pearl*; *vespertilio*, *bat*.
8. The following in *ūs* are feminine:—*incus*, *anvil*; *jūventus*, *youth*; *pālus*, *marsh*; *pēcūs*, *sheep*; *sālus*, *safety*; *sēnectus*, *old age*; *servitus*, *slavery*; *subscus*, *dovetail*; *tellus*, *earth*; *virtus*, *virtue*.

ADJECTIVES.

16. INFLECTION.

ADJECTIVES are declined like Nouns; and are either of the First and Second Declension, or of the Third.

I. Adjectives of the first and second declension are thus declined: —

	M.	F.	N.
SING. N.	cār ūs	cār ā	cār um, <i>Dear</i> .
G.	car ī	car ae	car ī
D.	car ō	car ae	car ō
Ac.	car um	caram	car um
V.	car ē	car ā	car um
Ab.	car ō	car ā	car ō
PLUR. N.	car ī	car ae	car ā
G.	car ōrum	car ārum	car ōrum
D.	car is	car is	car is
Ac.	car ōs	car ās	car ā
V.	car ī	car ae	car ā
Ab	car is	car is	car is

Like *carus* are declined most adjectives, and all participles, ending in *us*. In adjectives ending in *er*, the masculine is declined like *puer*, or *liber* (§ 10): as,

M. *miser*, F. *misera*, N. *miserum*, gen., *miseri*, etc., *wretched*.
āter *atra* *atrum* “ *atri* “ *black*.

The following have the genitive singular in *iūs*, and the dative in *i*, in all the genders (See *sōlus*, T. 3): —

ālius (N. *aliud*), *other*. *nullus*, *no*; *ullus*, *any* (with negatives).
alter, *other* (of two). *sōlus*, *alone*. *ūnus*, *one*.
neuter, *-trius* *neither*. *tōtus*, *whole*. *ūter*, *-trius* *which* (of two).

alius has gen. *alius*, dat. *alii*; *alter* has *altērius*, *alteri*.

II. Adjectives of the third declension are thus declined:—

VOWEL-STEMS.		CONSONANT-STEMS.	COMPARATIVES.
		SINGULAR.	
M., F. <i>Smooth</i> . N.		M., F. <i>Crazy</i> . N.	M., F. <i>Dearer</i> . N.
N.	<i>lēvis lēve</i>	<i>āmens</i>	<i>cārior cārius</i>
G.	<i>levis</i>	<i>amentis</i>	<i>cariōria</i>
D.	<i>levi</i>	<i>amenti</i>	<i>cariori</i>
Ac.	<i>levem leve</i>	<i>amentem amens</i>	<i>cariorem carius</i>
V.	<i>levis leve</i>	<i>amens</i>	<i>carior carius</i>
Ab.	<i>levi</i>	<i>amente, or i</i>	<i>cariore, or i</i>
PLURAL.			
N.	<i>leves levia</i>	<i>amentes amentia</i>	<i>cariores cariora</i>
G.	<i>levium</i>	<i>amentium</i>	<i>cariorum</i>
D.	<i>levibus</i>	<i>amentibus</i>	<i>carioribus</i>
Ac.	<i>leves levia</i>	<i>amentes amentia</i>	<i>cariores cariora</i>
V.	<i>leves levia</i>	<i>amentes amentia</i>	<i>cariores cariora</i>
Ab.	<i>levibus</i>	<i>amentibus</i>	<i>carioribus</i>

1. Adjectives of vowel-stems end in *is* (M., F.), and *e* (N.), and are called adjectives of two terminations. They have the abl. in *i*, and gen. pl. *ium*, and are declined like *nāvis* and *māre* (§ 11, 1.). A few have also a masc. nom. in *er* (declined like *uter*, T. 1), and are called adjectives of three terminations.

2. In adjectives of consonant-stems, — sometimes called adjectives of one termination, — the three genders are alike in all the cases except the acc. singular, and the nom. and acc. plural. The most common termination of the nominative is *ns* or *x*, the former including the present participle of all verbs. The abl. sing. ends in *e* or *i*, and the gen. plur. in *ium* (rarely contracted into *um*), except in those of liquid stems, with a few others.

17. COMPARISON.

I. The Comparative degree adds *ior*, *ius* to the stem, and is declined as *carior*; the Superlative adds *issimus*, *a*, *um*, and is declined as *carus*. Thus:—

carus, *dear*; *carior*, *dearer*; *carissimus*, *dearest*.

1. Adjectives in *er* form the superlative by adding *rimus* to the nominative: as,

niger, *black*: *nigrior*, *blacker*; *nigerrimus*, *blackest*.

2. Six adjectives, *fácilis*, *diffícilis*, *easy*, *hard*; *símilis*, *dis-similis*, *like*, *unlike*; *grácilis*, *slender*; *húmilis*, *low*, form the superlative by adding *-límus* to the stem: as, *facillimus*, *easiest*.

3. Compounds in *-dícus*, *saying*; *-fícus*, *doing*; *-vólus*, *willing*, are compared as if from corresponding participles in *-ns*: as, *mälédícus*, *slanderous*, *maledícen-tior*, *maledicentissimus*; *malefícus*, *mischievous*, *malefícen-tior*, *maleficientissimus*; *malevolus*, *spiteful*, *malevolen-tior*, *malevolentissimus*.

4. Adjectives in *us* preceded by a vowel, are generally compared by means of the adverbs *mágis*, *more*, and *maxímē*, *most*: as, *idóneus*, *fit*; *magis idoneus*, *maxime idoneus*.

II. The following are compared irregularly:—

bónus, *mélior*, *optímus*, *good*, *better*, *best*.

málus, *pējor*, *pessimus*, *bad*, *worse*, *worst*.

magnus, *mājōr*, *maximus*, *great*, *greater*, *greatest*.

parvus, *mīnōr*, *minimus*, *small*, *less*, *least*.

multum, *plūs*, (N.) *plurimum*, *much*, *more*, *most*.

multi, *plūres*, *plurimi*, *many*, *more*, *most*.

nēquam (indecl.), *nequior*, *nequissimus*, *worthless*.

frūgi (indecl.), *frugālior*, *frugalissimus*, *useful*, *worthy*.

dexter, *dextērior*, *dextímus*, *on the right*, *handy*.

III. The following comparatives and superlatives, denoting order in place or time, are formed from certain prepositions:—

[*citrā*, *this side*] *citērior*, *citímus*, *nearer*, *nearest*.

[*extrā*, *outside*] *extērior*, *extrēmus*, *outer*, *outmost*.

[*infrā*, *below*] *infērior*, *infimus* or *imus*, *lower*, *lowest*.

[*intrā*, *within*] *intērior*, *intímus*, *inner*, *inmost*.

[*post*, *after*] *postērior*, *postrēmus* or *postímus*, *latter*, *last*.

[*prae*, *before*] *prīor*, *prímus*, *former*, *first*.

[*prōpē*, *near*] *propior*, *proximus*, *nearer*, *next*.

[*suprā*, *above*] *sūpērior*, *suprēmus* or *summus*, *higher*, *highest*.

[*uitrā*, *beyond*] *ultērior*, *ultímus*, *farther*, *farthest*.

The positives *infērus*, *extērus*, &c., are rarely used as adjectives. But the plurals *extēri*, *foreigners*; *postēri*, *posterity*; *supēri*, *the heavenly gods*, and *infēri*, *those below*, are common.

From the nouns *jūvénis*, *youth*, *sénex*, *old man*, are formed the comparatives *jūnior*, *younger*, *senior*, *older*. For the super-

lative the phrase **minimus** or **maximus natu** is used, the noun **natu** being often understood: as,

maximus fratrum, *the eldest of the brothers.*

senior fratrum would mean *the elder of the two.*

IV. Some adjectives want the positive: as,

dētērior, **deterriūmus**, *worse, worst.*

ōcior, **ocissimus**, *swifter, swiftest.*

pōtior, **potissimus**, *more, and most preferable* [**pōtis**, *able*].

Some want the comparative: as,

falsus, **falsissimus**, *false, most false.*

incolītus (**inclūtus**), **incolitissimus**, *famous.*

nōvus, **novissimus**, *new, newest or last* (as in **novissimum agmen**, *the rear-guard*).

pauper, **pauperrimus**, *poor.*

sācer, **sacerrimus**, *sacred.*

vētus, **veterrimus**, *old.*

Some want the superlative: as,

ālācer, **alacrior**, *eager.*

ingens, **ingentior**, *huge.*

ōpimus, **opimior**, *rich.*

V. 1. The Comparative often denotes a considerable or excessive degree of a quality: as, **brēvior**, *rather short*; **audācior**, *too bold*. It is used instead of the superlative where only two are spoken of: as,

mēlior imperatorum, *the best of the (two) commanders.*

2. The comparative takes the ablative, or **quam**, *than*: as, **tribus unciiis altior est fratre** (or **quam frater**), *he is three inches taller than his brother.* (See § 54, v.)

3. Comparison between adjectives is expressed by comparatives with **quam**: as,

lātius quam altius est flūmen, *the stream is rather broad than deep.*

4. The Superlative (of eminence) often denotes a very high degree of a quality: as, **maximus numerus**, *a very great number*; **optimus quisque**, *all the best.*

5. The superlative with **quam** indicates the very highest degree of a quality: as, **quam plurimi**, *as many as possible.*

Table 3.

INFLECTION OF ADJECTIVES.—I.

FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION.

Bonus, good.			Solus, alone, only.		
Sing. M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. bo'nus	bo'na	bo'num	solus	so'la	so'lum
G. bo'ni	bo'næ	bo'ni	sol'i'us	sol'i'us	sol'i'us
D. bo'no	bo'næ	bo'no	so'li	so'li	so'li
A. bo'num	bo'nam	bo'num	so'lum	so'lam	so'lum
V. bo'ne	bo'na	bo'num	so'le	so'la	so'lum
A. bo'no	bo'na	bo'no	so'lo	so'la	so'lo
<i>Plur.</i>					
N. bo'ni	bo'næ	bo'na	so'li	so'læ	so'la
G. bono'rum	bona'rum	bono'rum	solo'rum	sola'rum	solo'rum
D. bo'nis	bo'nis	bo'nis	so'lis	so'lis	so'lis
A. bo'nos	bo'nas	bo'na	so'los	so'las	so'la
V. bo'ni	bo'næ	bo'na	so'li	so'læ	so'la
A. bo'nis	bo'nis	bo'nis	so'lis	so'lis	so'lis
Miser, wretched.			Ater, black.		
Sing. M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. mi'ser	mis'era	mis'erum	a'ter	a'tra	a'trum
G. mis'eri	mis'eræ	mis'eri	a'tri	a'træ	a'tri
D. mis'ero	mis'eræ	mis'ero	a'tro	a'træ	a'tro
A. mis'erum	mis'eram	mis'erum	a'trum	a'tram	a'trum
V. mi'ser	mis'era	mis'erum	a'ter	a'tra	a'trum
A. mis'ero	mis'era	mis'ero	a'tro	a'tra	a'tro
<i>Plur.</i>					
N. mis'eri	mis'eræ	mis'era	a'tri	a'træ	a'tra
G. misero'rum	miser'a'rum	miser'o'rum	atro'rum	atra'rum	atro'rum
D. mis'eris	mis'eris	mis'eris	a'tris	a'tris	a'tris
A. mis'erös	mis'eräs	mis'era	a'tros	a'tras	a'tra
V. mis'eri	mis'eræ	mis'era	a'tri	a'træ	a'tra
A. mis'eris	mis'eris	mis'eris	a'tris	a'tris	a'tris

THIRD DECLENSION.

1. ADJECTIVES OF TWO AND THREE TERMINATIONS (*Vowel Stems*).

Facilis, easy.			Celeber, famous.		
Sing. M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. fac'ilis	fac'ilis	fac'ile	cel'eber	cel'ebri	cel'ebre
G. fac'ilis	fac'ilis	fac'ilis	cel'ebri	cel'ebri	cel'ebri
D. fac'ili	fac'ili	fac'ili	cel'ebri	cel'ebri	cel'ebri
A. fac'ilem	fac'ilem	fac'ile	cel'ebrem	cel'ebrem	cel'ebre
V. fac'ilis	fac'ilis	fac'ile	cel'eber	cel'ebri	cel'ebre
A. fac'ili	fac'ili	fac'ili	cel'ebri	cel'ebri	cel'ebri
<i>Plur.</i>					
N. fac'iles	fac'iles	facil'ia	cel'ebres	cel'ebres	cele'bria
G. facil'ium	facil'ium	facil'ium	cele'brium	cele'brium	cele'brium
D. facil'ibus	facil'ibus	facil'ibus	cele'bribus	cele'bribus	cele'bribus
A. fac'iles(is)	fac'iles(is)	facil'ia	cel'ebres(is)	cel'ebres(is)	cele'bria
V. fac'iles	fac'iles	facil'ia	cel'ebres	cel'ebres	cele'bria
D. facil'ibus	facil'ibus	facil'ibus	cele'bribus	cele'bribus	cele'bribus

Like celëber are declined acer, keen; aläcer, eager; campester, of the field; equester, of horsemen; paluster, marshy; pedester, on foot; puter, rotten; salüber, wholesome; silvester, wooded; terrester, of the land; volücer, winged; also, celer, celëris, celere, swift.

Table 4.

INFLECTION OF ADJECTIVES.—II.

ADJECTIVES OF ONE TERMINATION (*Consonant Stems*).

<i>Sing.</i>	M. F.	N.	M. F.	N.	M. F.	N.
N.	u'ber, <i>fertile</i>		ve'tus, <i>old</i>		par, <i>equal</i>	
G.	u'beris		ve'teris		pa'ris	
D.	u'beri		ve'teri		pa'ri	
A.	u'berem u'ber		ve'terem ve'tus		pa'rem par	
V.	u'ber		ve'tus		par	
A.	u'bere (i)		ve'tere (i)		pari	
<i>Plur.</i>						
N.	u'beres u'bera		ve'teres ve'tera		pa'res pa'ria	
G.	u'berum		ve'terum		pa'rium	
D.	uber'ibus		ve'teribus		par'ibus	
A.	u'beres u'bera		ve'teres ve'tera		pa'res pa'ria	
V.	u'beres u'bera		ve'teres ve'tera		pa'res pa'ria	
A.	uber'ibus		ve'teribus		par'ibus	
<i>Plur. M. F.</i>						
N.	in'ops, <i>poor</i>	sos'pes, <i>safe</i>	di'ves, <i>rich</i>		e'dax, <i>greedy</i>	
G.	in'opis	sos'pitis	di'vitis		eda'cia	
D.	in'opi	sos'piti	di'viti		eda'ci	
A.	in'opem	sos'pitem	di'vitem di'ves	eda'cem	e'dax	
V.	in'ops	sos'pes	di'ves		e'dax	
A.	in'opi	sos'pite	di'vite (i)		eda'ci	
<i>Sing.</i>						
N.	in'opes	sos'pites	di'vites (ditia)	eda'ces	eda'cia	
G.	in'opum	sos'pitum	di'vitum		eda'cium	
D.	inop'ibus	sospit'ibus	divit'ibus		edac'ibus	
A.	in'opes	sos'pites	di'vites (ditia)	eda'ces	eda'cia	
V.	in'opes	sos'pites	di'vites (ditia)	eda'ces	eda'cia	
A.	inop'ibus	sospit'ibus	divit'ibus		edac'ibus	
<i>Sing. PARTICIPLES.</i>						
	M. F.	N.	M. F.	N.	M. F.	N.
N.	a'mans, <i>loving</i>		i'ens, <i>going</i>		alt'ior	alt'ius, <i>higher</i>
G.	aman'tis		eun'tis		altio'ris	
D.	aman'ti		eun'ti		altio'ri	
A.	aman'tem a'mans		eun'tem i'ens		altio'rem alt'ius	
V.	a'mans		i'ens		alt'ior	alt'ius
A.	aman'te (i)		eun'te (i)		altio're (i)	
<i>Plur.</i>						
N.	aman'tes aman'tia		eun'tes eun'tia		altio'res altio'ra	
G.	aman'tium (um)		eun'tium		altio'rum	
D.	aman'tibus		eun'tibus		altio'ribus	
A.	aman'tes aman'tia		eun'tes eun'tia		altio'res altio'ra	
V.	aman'tes aman'tia		eun'tes eun'tia		altio'res altio'ra	
A.	aman'tibus		eun'tibus		altio'ribus	

The ablative singular commonly ends in *i*. Many adjectives, as, *inops*, have only *i*; some, as *sospes*, only *e*. Comparatives, and participles in *ns*, when used as participles, have usually *e*; so also have adjectives used as nouns, as *inops*, *a poor man*, *inope*.

Liquid stems, and a few mute stems, as *dives*, *inops*, *supplex*, *particeps*, with those that have abl. sing. *e*, have gen. pl. *um*.

Some adjectives, as *inops*, *sospes*, are found only in the masc. and fem., and may be called adjectives of Common Gender.

Plus, *more* (N.), has gen. *pluris*; plur., nom. *plures*, *plura*; gen. *plurium*, etc.: *complures*, *several*, has sometimes neut. pl. *compluria*. All other comparatives are declined like *altior*.

18. NUMERALS.

I. CARDINAL AND ORDINAL.

1.	ūnus, una, unum, <i>one</i>	primus a um, <i>first</i>	I.
2.	duō, duae, duo, <i>two</i>	secundus, alter, <i>second</i>	II.
3.	trēs, tria, <i>three &c.</i>	tertius, <i>third</i>	III.
4.	quattuor	quartus, <i>fourth</i>	IV.
5.	quinquē	quintus	V.
6.	sex	sextus	VI.
7.	septem	septimus	VII.
8.	octō	octāvus	VIII.
9.	nōvem	nōnus	IX.
10.	dēcem	dēcimus	X.
11.	undēcim	undēcimus	XI.
12.	duōdēcim	duōdēcimus	XII.
13.	tredecim	tertius decimus	XIII.
14.	quattuordecim	quartus decimus	XIV.
15.	quindecim	quintus decimus	XV.
16.	sēdecim	sextus decimus	XVI.
17.	septendecim	septimus decimus	XVII.
18.	duōdēviginti, octo-	duodevicesimus	XVIII.
19.	undēviginti [decim	undēvicesimus	XIX.
20.	vīginti	vicēsimus (vigésimus)	XX.
21.	viginti unus, <i>or</i> unus	vicesimus primus	XXI.
30.	trīgintā [et vig.	tricēsimus	XXX.
40.	quadrāgintā	quadrāgesimus	XL.
50.	quīquāgintā	quīquāgesimus	L or L.
60.	sexāgintā	sexāgesimus	LX.
70.	septuāgintā	septuāgesimus	LXX.
80.	octōgintā	octōgesimus	LXXX.
90.	nōnāgintā	nōnāgesimus	XC.
100.	centum	centesimus	C.
200.	dūcenti, ae, ā	dūcentesimus	CC.
300.	trēcenti	trēcentesimus	CCC.
400.	quadrīngenti	quadrīngentesimus	CCCC.
500.	quīngenti	quīngentesimus	IO, or D.
600.	sexcenti	sexcentesimus	DC.
700.	septīngenti	septīngentesimus	DCC.
800.	octīngenti	octīngentesimus	DCCC.
900.	nongenti	nongentesimus	DCCCC.
1000.	mille	millēsimus	CIO, or M.
10,000.	decem mīlia	decies millesimus	CCIOO.

1. **Unus a um** has genitive **unūs**, dative **uni** (§ 16, I.).
2. **Duo** (also **ambo**, *both*) is thus declined: —

	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	duo	duae	duo
Gen.	duorum	duarum	duorum
D. Ab.	duobus	duabus	duobus
Ac.	duos, duo	duas	duo

3. **Tres** is declined regularly, like the plural of **levis** (§ 16, II.). The other cardinal numbers up to **centum** (100) are indeclinable. **Mille** is indeclinable as an adjective; but when several thousands are spoken of, the noun **mīlia** is used, declined like the plural of **mare** (§ 11, I.), the noun described being put in the genitive plural: as, **cum decem milibus mīlitum**, *with ten thousand men*.

4. The numeral adverbs are: **sēmēl**, *once*; **bīs**, *twice*; **tēr**, *thrice*; **quātēr**, *four times*. Those of higher numbers end in **iens** or **iēs**: as, **quinq̄uiens** (or **quinq̄uiēs**), *decies*, *millies*, &c.

II. DISTRIBUTIVE.

1. singūli , <i>single</i>	12. duōdēni	200. dticēni
2. bīni , <i>in pairs</i>	13. terni dēni , &c.	300. trēcēni
3. terni , trīni	20. vīcēni	400. quādringēni
4. quāterni	30. trīcēni	500. quingēni
5. quīni	40. quādrāgēni	600. sescēni
6. sēni	50. quīnquagēni	700. septingēni
7. septēni	60. sexāgēni	800. octingēni
8. octōni	70. septuāgēni	900. nongēni
9. nōvēni	80. octōgēni	1000. millēni
10. dēni	90. nōnāgēni	2000. bis milleni
11. undēni	100. centēni	10,000. decies milleni

Distributives are used, —

1. As in the phrase **singulas binis navibus obiciēbant**, *they matched the ships one against every two*. — Cæs. B.C., I. 58.

2. Instead of cardinals, when the noun is plural in form but singular in meaning: as, **bina castra**, *two camps*: (**duo castra** would mean *two forts*): but **una castra**, *one camp*.

3. In multiplication: as, **bis bina**, *twice two*; **quater septēnis diebus**; i. e., *in four weeks*.

PRONOUNS

10. PERSONAL AND REFLEXIVE

I. The personal pronouns *ego* and *tu* are not declined. —

	FIRST PERSON	SECOND PERSON
	<i>Ego</i>	<i>Tu</i>
Nom. S.	<i>ego</i>	<i>tū</i>
G.	<i>mei</i>	<i>tui</i>
D.	<i>mihi</i> <i>mi</i>	<i>tibi</i>
Acc.	<i>mē</i>	<i>tē</i>
Ab.	<i>mē</i>	<i>tē</i>
Nom. Pl. Acc.	<i>nōs</i>	<i>vōs</i>
G.	{ <i>nostrum</i> / <i>nostrī</i>	{ <i>vestrum</i> (<i>vostrum</i>) / <i>vestrī</i> (<i>vostrī</i>)
D. Acc.	<i>nōbīs</i>	<i>vōbīs</i>

II. The personal pronouns of the first and second persons are used also reflexively : as,

tu te laudās, you praise yourself.

The reflexive pronoun of the third person, *himself*, *herself*, *themselves*, is thus declined : —

G. *sui* D. *sibi* Acc. and Ab. *sē*, or *sēsē*

It regularly refers to the subject of the sentence or clause.

III. The genitives *nostrum*, *vestrum*, are used partitively : as, *unusquisque vestrum*, each one of you ; *mei*, *tui*, *sui*, *nostrī* and *vestrī* are used objectively (See § 50, III.) : as, *memento esse nostrī*, be mindful of us.

For the genitive of possession, the adjective pronouns **meus** (voc. masc. **mi**), **tuus**, **suns**, **noster**, **vester**, are always used, declined as in § 16, 1. : **as, mi fili, my son ; cum amicis meis, with my friends.**

They agree with genitives in such phrases as **tuam ipsius patriam prodidisti, you have betrayed your own fatherland ; suo solius periculo, at his own peril only.** — Cic. Cat., IV. 11.

The preposition **cum, with**, is joined *enclitically* with the ablative of the personal pronouns : thus, **nobiscum ambulat, he is walking with us.**

The enclitics **-ce, -met, -pte**, are emphatic.

20. DEMONSTRATIVE.

I. The demonstrative pronouns **hic, this ; is, iste, ille, that ;** and **ipse, self**, are thus declined : —

SINGULAR.						
N.	hic	haec	hoc	is	eā	id
G.		hūjūs			ejus	
D.		huic			eī	
Ac.	hunc	hanc	hoc	eum	eam	id
Ab.	hōc	hāc	hōc	eō	eā	eō
PLURAL.						
N.	hī	hae	haec	īi (eī)	eae	eā
G.	hōrum	hārum	hōrum	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
D. Ab.		his		eīs or īīs		
Ac.	hōs	hās	haec	eōs	eās	eā
Ab.		his		eīs or īīs		

The Demonstratives **iste, ista, istud ; ille, illa, illud, that ; ipse, ipsa, ipsum, self**, have gen. **ius**, dat. **i** : otherwise, they are declined like **carus**, but with neut. acc. like the nominative (**T. 5**).

II. **Hic** is sometimes called the demonstrative of the first person ; **iste** (used especially in reference to the person spoken to, and frequently implying contempt), the demonstrative of the second person ; **ille** (referring to more remote objects, and used especially of those celebrated or well known), the demonstrative of the third person. **Ille** and **hic** are often used as “ the former ” and “ the latter.” **Hic**, or **hic hōmo**, is sometimes equivalent to **ego, I** : **as, tu si hic sis, if you were I.** — Ter. Andr. II. 1. **ill** has an old form **ollus**.

Is is used especially in reference to something just mentioned, or as antecedent to the relative **qui**, *who*. It is used oftener than the other demonstratives as a personal pronoun of the third person, and is sometimes nearly equivalent to the article *a* or *the*: as, **eum quem esse hostem compēristi**, *one whom you have found to be a public enemy*. — Cic. Cat. I. 11.

habētis eum consulem qui . . . non dubitet, *you have a consul who will not hesitate*. — Id. IV. 11.

Ipsæ, *self*, the intensive pronoun, is frequently joined with another pronoun: as, **nos ipsi**, or **nosmetipsi**, *we ourselves*; or it may be used independently in either person: as, **ipsi adestis**, *you are yourselves present*. Often it may be translated *very*: as, **ipsi colles clāmant**, *the very hills cry out*.

Idem, **eādem**, **Idem**, *the same*, is declined like **is**; **m** being generally changed to **n** before **d**, as in the accusative **eundem**.

21. RELATIVE.

I. The relative pronoun **qui**, *who*, is thus declined: —

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
N.	quī	quæ	quōd	quī	quæ	quæ (quā)
G.	cujus (quius)			quōrum quārum quōrum		
D.	cui (quoi)			quibūs or quīs		
Ac.	quem	quam	quōd	quōs	quās	quæ
Ab.	quō	quā	quō	quibūs		

1. An old form of the ablative is **qui**; it is oftenest used as an interrogative adverb, *how*?

The indefinite relative, **quicumque**, *whoever*, is declined like **qui**; **quisquis**, *whoever*, rarely occurs except in the forms **quisquis**, **quicquid** (**quidquid**), and **quoquo**.

2. The preposition **cum**, *with*, is affixed to the ablative of **qui**, as to the personal pronouns; as, **quocum**, **quibuscum**, **quicum**, *with whom*.

II. 1. **Qui**, *who*, is also used as an interrogative; but when used substantively, the nominative singular is **quis** (rarely **qui**), **quæ**, **quid**; as, **quis adest**? *who is here*? **quid ais**? *what do you say*?

2. As an adjective, **qui** is frequently, and **quod** always, used: as, **qui (or quīs) homo est**? *what man is it*? **quod bellum tum gerēbātur**? *what war was then waging*?

3. **Quantus**, *how great*; **quālis**, *of what kind*, and the like, are also used both as relative and interrogative, corresponding to **tantus**, *so great*; **tālis**, *such*, etc. (§ 22, i.).

4. The conjunction **atque**, **ac**, is often used as a relative: as, **pro eo ac mēreor**, *according to what I deserve*. — Cic.

III. The indefinite pronouns **quispiam**, *any*; **quisquam**, *any at all*; **quīvis**, **quīlibet**, *any you please*; **quisque**, *every*; **unusquisque**, *each*; and **quīdam**, *a certain one*, are declined like **quis** or **qui**; having the neuter forms **quid** (subst.), and **quod** (adj.).

Aliquis, *some*, and **quis**, *any*, usually have **qua** for **quae**, except in the nom. fem. plural. **Quis**, *any*, is seldom used, except after **si**, *if*; **ne**, *lest*; **num** and **ec**, *whether* (interrog.)

22. CORRELATIVES.

1. These are demonstrative, relative, interrogative, and indefinite; the demonstratives generally commence with **t** or **i**; the relatives and interrogatives (which are alike) with **qu**; the indefinites with **alī**: as,

tantus, *so great*; **quantus**, *as or how great*; **aliquantus**, *of some size*.

ibi, *there*; (**hic**, **istic**, **illuc**); **ūbi**, *where*; **ālicūbi**, *somewhere*.

eo, *thither*; (**huc**, **illuc**); **quo**, *whither*; **aliquo**, *to some place*.

indē, *thence*; (**hinc**, **illinc**); **undē**, *whence*; **alundē**, *from some place*.

tum, **tunc**, *then*; **quum** or **cum**, *when*; **quando?** *when?* **alīquando**, *at some time, or at length*. (See §§ 41, II. 2; 43, 7.)

tōt, *so many*; **quōt**, *as or how many*; **āliquōt**, *a number of*.

These last are indeclinable: as,

per tot annos, **tot proellīs**, **tot impērātōres**, *so many commanders, for so many years, in so many battles*. — Cic.

2. **Alter . . . alter** (where only two are spoken of), and **ālius . . . ālius**, *one . . . another*, are used as correlatives in such phrases as —

alter ārāt, **alter sērīt**, *one ploughs, the other sows*.

alī mē laudant, **alī culpant**, *some praise me, others blame*.

alīus alīūd āmāt, *one likes one thing, and one another* (§ 47, IX.).

hī fratres inter sē āmant alter altērum, *these brothers love one another*.

Table 5.

PRONOUNS. — I.

PERSONAL, POSSESSIVE, AND DEMONSTRATIVE.

First Person.

SING. I.		My.		Of our country.
N. ego	meus	mea	meum	nostras
G. mei	mei	meæ	mei	nostra'tis
D. mini	meo	meæ	meo	nostra'ti
A. me	meum	meam	meum	nostra'tem -tras
V. —	mi	mea	meum	nostras
A. me	meo	mea	meo	nostra'te (i)
PLUR. We.				
N. nos	mei	meæ	mea	nostra'tes -tia
G. nostrum, -tri	meorum	meorum	meorum	nostra'tium
D. nobis	meis	meis	meis	nostrat'ibus
A. nos	meos	meas	mea	nostra'tes -tia
V. —	mei	meæ	mea	nostra'tes -tia
A. nobis	meis	meis	meis	nostrat'ibus

Second Person.

SING. Thou.		Your.		[Whose.]
N. tu	vester	vestra	vestrum	cujus -a -um
G. tui	vestri	vestræ	vestri	—
D. tui	vestro	vestræ	vestro	—
A. te	vestrum	vestram	vestrum	cujum -am -um
V. tu	—	—	—	—
A. te	vestro	vestra	vestro	cuja
PLUR. You.				
N. vos	vestri	vestræ	vestra	cujæ
G. vestrum, -tri	vestrorum	vestrarum	vestrarum	—
D. vobis	vestris	vestris	vestris	—
A. vos	vestros	vestras	vestra	cujas
V. vos	—	—	—	—
A. vobis	vestris	vestris	vestris	—

Demonstratives.

SING.	That.			Self.	
N. ille	illa	illud		ipse	ipsa
G. illi'us	illi'us	illi'us		ipsi'us	ipsi'us
D. illi	illi	illi		ipsi	ipsi
A. illum	illum	illud		ipsum	ipsum
V. —	—	—		ipse	ipsa
A. illo	illa	illo		ipso	ipsa
PLUR.	Those.			Selves.	
N. illi	illæ	illa		ipsi	ipsæ
G. illorum	illorum	illorum		ipsorum	ipsorum
D. illis	illis	illis		ipsis	ipsis
A. illos	illas	illa		ipsos	ipsas
V. —	—	—		ipsi	ipsæ
A. illis	illis	illis		ipsis	ipsis

The Same.

SING.				PLUR.	
N. idem	e'adem	i'dem	ii'dem	eæ'dem	e'adem
G. ejus'dem	ejus'dem	ejus'dem	eorun'dem	earun'dem	eorun'dem
D. ei'dem	ei'dem	ei'dem		eis'dem	ois'dem
A. eundem	ean'dem	i'dem	eos'dem	eas'dem	e'adem
A. eodem	ea'dem	eo'dem		eis'dem	ois'dem

Idem is the demonstrative **is**, **ea**, **id**, with the affix **-dem**, *same*; which is also added to the ablatives **eō**, *to that place*, and **eā**, *by that way*.

Table 6.

PRONOUNS. — II.

RELATIVE, INTERROGATIVE, AND INDEFINITE.

SING.	Who?		Some one.		
N. quis	quæ	quid	al'iquis	al'iqua	al'iquid
G. cuius	cujus			alicujus	
D. cui	cui			alicui	
A. quem	quam	quid	al'iquem	al'iquam	al'iquid
A. quo	qua	quo	al'iquo	al'iqua	al'iquo
PLUR.					
N. qui	quæ	quæ	al'iqui	al'iquæ	al'iqua
G. quorum	quarum	quorum	aliquo'rum	aliqua'rum	aliquo'rum
D. quibus	quibus			aliquibus	
A. quos	quas	quæ	al'iquos	al'iquas	al'iqua
A. quibus	quibus			aliquibus	

Like **al'iquis** are declined the indefinite pronouns **quis**, **quidam**, **any**.

SING.	A certain one.		Any at all.	
N. quidam	quæ'dam	quoddam	quisquam	quicquam
G. cuiusdam	cujus'dam		cujus'quam	
D. cuiusdam	cui'dam		cui'quam	
A. quemdam	quandam	quoddam	quemquam	quicquam
A. quodam	quadam	quodam	quoquam	
PLUR.			No one.	
N. quidam	quædam	quædam	nemo	
G. quorundam	quarundam	quorundam	(nulli'us)	
D. quibusdam	quibusdam		nem'ini	
A. quosdam	quasdam	quædam	nem'inem	
A. quibusdam	quibusdam		(nullo)	

Quisque, *every*, and **unusquisque** are thus declined: —

N. unusquis'que	unaquæ'que	unumquid'que	(-quodque, -quicquid)
G. uniuscujus'que			
D. uniuscui'que			
A. unumquemque	unamquam'que	unumquid'que	
A. unoquo'que	unaqua'que	unoquo'que	

Compounds of **quis** (**qui**), *who*, and **uter**, *which of the two*, are: —

quisque ,	uterque (utrâque utrumque),	<i>each</i>
quivis ,	utervis ,	} <i>whichever you please</i>
quilibet ,	uterlibet ,	
quicumque ,	uterumque ,	<i>whichever</i>
[undique ,]	utrimque (adv.),	<i>on all (or both) sides</i>
—	alteruter (-tra, -trum, gen. trius),	<i>one or the other</i>

Quisquam (pron.) and **ullus** (adj.), *any*; **umquam**, *ever*; **usquam**, *anywhere*, are used only in negative, interrogative, and conditional sentences; also after **quam**, *than*, or **sine**, *without*.

The use of these indefinites is seen in the following lines: —

Quis , quispiam , <i>any</i> , esse dant	Quivis , quilibet , <i>any you please</i> ,
Vel ponunt; non determinant:	Continebunt cunctas res:
Aliquis , <i>some one</i> , denotat	Quisquam , <i>any at all</i> , et ullus ,
Quempiam , sed non nominat.	Excludunt omnes, sicut nullus .

Donaldson.

With all relatives, the enclitic affix **-cumque**, *-soever*, may be used: as, **qualiscumque**, *of what kind soever*.

V E R B S.

23. STRUCTURE.

1. Latin verbs have two VOICES, viz. Active and Passive; — four MOODS, viz. Indicative, Subjunctive, Imperative, Infinitive; — four PARTICIPLES, viz. the Present and Future Active, the Perfect Passive, and the Gerundive; — two VERBAL NOUNS, viz. the Gerund and the Supine; — six TENSES, viz. Present, Imperfect, Perfect, Pluperfect, Future, and Future Perfect; — of PERSONS, three in the singular and three in the plural.

2. The future and future perfect are wanting in the subjunctive mood; and the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect in the passive voice: their places being supplied by participles, combined with corresponding tenses of the verb *esse*, *to be*; but for the Fut. Perf. Subjunctive, the perfect is used.

3. The passive form has often a reflexive meaning: as, *cingitur gladius*, *he girds on his (own) sword*.
vellāmur capita, *we veil our heads*. — Virg. *Æn.* III. 545.

24. MOODS.

I. The Indicative Mood is used for direct assertion or interrogation.

II. The Subjunctive Mood is used for dependent propositions and indirect questions. It is generally translated by the English indicative, especially when preceded by particles expressing condition or result; sometimes by the potential, *may*, *might*, or *would*, especially after particles expressing motive or purpose.

Examples of the use of the subjunctive in dependent constructions are as follows: —

- nescio quid scribam, *I know not what to write.* (§ 67, I. 1.)
 nescio quid scribas, *I know not what you are writing.*
 ūt scribam, non est sātis, *though I write, it is not enough.* (§ 61, 2.)
 sīne scribam, *let me write.* (§ 64, IV.)
 licet scribas, *you may write.*
 cāve scribas, *do not write.* (§ 58, III.)
 non is sum qui scribam, *I am not the one to write.* (§ 65, I.)
 vēreor ne scribat, *I fear he will write.* (§ 64, III.)
 vereor ut scribat, *I fear he will not write.*
 sunt qui pūtent, *there are some who think.* (§ 65, IV. 2.)
 nemo est quin putet, *there is none but thinks.*
 sēdet (sedēbat) illic, tamquam scribat (scribēret), *he sits (sat) yonder as if he were writing.* (§ 61, I.)
 si haec sciret, non venīret, *if he knew this, he would not come.*
 si haec cognoscat, non vēniat, *if he should find this out, he would not come.* (§ 59, IV. 1.)
 nisi haec cognōvisset, non vēnisset, *if he had not found this out, he would not have come.* (§ 59, IV. 2.)
 vēnit ut vidēret, *he came to see.* (§ 64, I.)
 ēvēnit ut videret, *it turned out that he saw.* (§ 70, II.)
 tam prōpē erat ut videret, *he was so near as to see.* (§ 65, I.)
 quis non gaudeat haec videns? *who would not be glad to see this?* (§ 60, 3.)
 cum domum rediisset, mortuus est, *when he had returned home, he died.* (§ 62, I.)

An Indirect Question is an assertion in which a question is implied, without being expressed (See Supp., 3, ii., 4, p. 137): thus —

quis adest? *who is here?* is a direct question; but
 dic mihi quis adsit, *tell me who is here,* is an indirect question.

III. 1. The Imperative present is used as in English; but its place is often supplied (always in the first person) by the present or perfect subjunctive: as,

nē crēde cōlōri, *do not trust complexion.* (§ 58, III.)
 dum vivimus vivāmus, *while we live let us live.*

Not with the Imperative is nē; and nor, nēvē.

2. The future is used especially for edicts and laws: as,
regi imperii duo sunt, iique consules appellantur, *there shall be two of kingly authority, and they shall be called consuls.* — Cic. Leg. III. 3.

hominem mortuum in urbe ne sepelito neve urito, *a dead man in the city thou shalt not bury nor burn.* — XII. Tab. in Cic.

IV. The Infinitive is used — 1. As the Object of a Verb: as,
audire non possum, *I cannot hear.*

2. With a Subject-Accusative, especially after Verbs of knowing, thinking, and telling: as,
dixit me adesse, *he said that I was present.*

3. As an Indeclinable Noun (with or without a subject-accusative), when it is often rendered in English by the participial noun: as,

vivere est cogitare, *living is thinking.*

miseret me te esse pauperem, *it grieves me that you are poor.*

25. PARTICIPLES.

I. The Present Participle ends in **ns** (corresponding to our participle in *ing*), and is declined like **sapiens**, § 16, II.

When used as an adjective, the ablative singular ends in **i**: as,

flōrenti urbe pōtitur, *he takes a flourishing city*; but,
florente urbe, *while the city flourished* (§ 54, x.).

The Future Active Participle (frequently expressing purpose) ends in **urus**. The Perfect Passive Participle ends in **us**, and the Gerundive (sometimes called the Future Passive Participle), in **dus**; they are declined like **cārus** (§ 16, I.).

The Gerundive in the nominative has the meaning of *ought* or *must*: as, **dēlenda est Karthāgo**, *Carthage must be destroyed*; but in other cases it is translated as if it governed the noun it agrees with: as, **ad pācem pētendam**, *to beg peace.*

II. The use of these participles is seen in the following examples: —

tē **Id** **dīcentem** **audivi**, *I heard you say that.*

sāpientia Dei omnia gūbernantis, *the wisdom of God, who governs all.*

Cūrio ad fōcum sēdenti, *to Curius as he sat by the fire.*

Romā prōficiēscens Neāpōli diu mānēbat, *on his way from Rome he staid a good while at Naples.*

Romā profectus Athēnas vēnit, *he set out from Rome and came to Athens.*

Romam vēnit lūdōs spectāturus, or, **ad spectandos ludos**, *he came to Rome to see the games.*

bōna pēto semper dūrātūra, *I seek goods that will last forever.*

rēluctante nātūrā, irrītus lābor est, *if nature refuses, toil is vain.*

**anno post exactos reges decimo, ab urbe condītā ducentē-
sīmo quinquagesimo quarto**, *the tenth year after the kings' banishment, and the 254th from the founding of the city.*

And the Perfect Participle in English must often be rendered by other constructions in Latin: as,

cum Romam rediisset, in fōrum vēnit, *having returned to Rome, he came into the forum.*

equitātu praemisso, subsequēbātūr omnibus cōpiis, *having sent forward the cavalry, he followed close with all his forces.* — Cæs. B.G. II. 19.

26. GERUND AND SUPINE.

I. The Gerund is inflected as a Neuter Noun of the Second Declension. Its use is as follows:—

N. **scribendum est mihi**, *I have to write.*

G. **lābor scribendi**, *the task of writing.*

D. **ūtīle scribendo**, *serviceable for writing.*

Ac. **inter scribendum**, *while writing.*

Ab. **scribendo respondit**, *he answered by writing.*

But when the Gerund would take a direct object, the Gerundive is usually employed: as,

N. **scribenda est mihi epistōla**, *I have to write a letter.*

G. **labor scribendae epistōlae**, *the task of writing a letter.*

NOTE.—The nominative of the Gerund or Gerundive is the regular way in Latin of expressing *ought* or *must*. (See § 73.)

II. The Former Supine is in form the accusative, and the Latter Supine the ablative, of a verbal noun of the fourth declension. (§ 12, 1.)

The Former is used after verbs of motion, especially in dialogue or familiar speech: as, *hūc vēnit consultum*, *he has come hither to consult*; the Latter after certain adjectives: as, *horribile dictu*, *shocking to tell*. The latter is found only in a few verbs.

27. TENSES.

I. The Present tense expresses an action or state as now continuing; as, *vōco*, *I am calling*; *vocor*, *I am [being] called*, i. e. *some one is now calling me*.

It is sometimes used, as in English, to give life to narrative: as, *Caesar convōcat suos*, *Cæsar summons his men*; and may sometimes be rendered by the Perfect in English: as, *jamdiu te vōco*, *I have been long calling you*.

II. The Imperfect is used to tell a condition of things formerly existing. Hence it is employed —

1. In Descriptions: as, *erant omnino itinēra duo . . . mons altissimus impendēbat*, *there were in all two ways . . . a very high mountain overhung*. — Cæs. B.G. I. 6.

2. To relate a Continued or Repeated Action: as, *saepē dicēbat*, *he would often say*; *mirābar*, *I used to wonder*.

3. To state the Circumstances attending an action or event: as, *dum haec gērēbantur*, *while this was going on*.

III. The Perfect is used to tell an action or event occurring at a given time in the past. Hence it is employed —

1. In Narration (perfect aorist, indefinite, or historical): as, *vēni, vidi, vici*, *I came, saw, conquered*.

2. After *ūt, ūbi, posteaquam* or *postquam*, *when*, (with a leading verb in a past tense), as equivalent to the pluperfect: as, *haec ūbi dixit, abiit*, *when he had said this, he went away*.

3. It is also used to relate a past act or state in reference to the present time (perfect definite or relative): as, *pāter te jam vocāvit*, *your father has already called you*.

4. In the subjunctive, it usually follows a leading verb in the present; as,

nescio utrum itā evēnērit necne, *I don't know whether it happened (or has happened) so or not.*

In Latin, and in all languages derived from Latin, there are two past tenses, — the Perfect, or Preterite, which is used for narration, to tell the main fact; and the Imperfect, which is used for description, or to state the attending circumstances: as,

dum Ciccero domi manēbat, Caesar interfectus est, *while Cicero staid at home, Cæsar was slain.*

The Gothic languages, including English, have only one Past tense.

IV. The Future and Future Perfect are used, though with greater accuracy, like the corresponding tenses in English: as,

cum audivēro, scribam, *when I [shall] have heard, I will write.*

V. Tenses are distributed in these two classes, —

1. PRIMARY, including Present, Perfect [Definite], and Future.

2. SECONDARY, including Imperfect, Perfect [Historical], and Pluperfect.

VI. The Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect, of the Active Voice, are derived from a stem (wanting in the Passive), which is usually formed by adding **v** [**u**] or **s**, with or without a connecting vowel, to the Stem of the Present; this is called the Second or Perfect Stem: as,

voc o, vocavi; — dic o, dixi

In the Passive, these tenses are supplied by adding the corresponding tenses of **esse**, *to be*, to the Perfect Participle, made by adding the endings **us**, **a**, **um**, to the Supine stem: as, **occisus est**, *he was slain*; **monita erat**, *she had been warned*.

TABLE OF TENSES.

TIME.	Action Incomplete.	Action Complete.	Action Indefinite.	
<i>Present.</i>	Present.	Perfect (<i>def.</i>).	Present.	} <i>Primary Tenses.</i>
<i>Future.</i>	Future.	Fut. Perfect.	Future.	
<i>Past.</i>	Imperfect.	Pluperfect.	Perfect (<i>hist.</i>), or Aorist.	} <i>Secondary Tenses.</i>

28. PERSONAL ENDINGS.

The terminations of the persons are as follows : —

ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
S. 1. m [o, i]	P. 1. mus	S. 1. r	P. 1. mur
2. s [sti]	2. tis	2. ris, re	2. mīni
3. t	3. nt	3. tur	3. ntur

All Latin words in common use, ending in *t*, — except those in *ot* or *ut*; with *at*, *but*; *et. and*; *dumtaxat*, *however*; *licet*, *although*, and indefinites in *-libet*, — are in the third person of verbs; all ending in *nt* are in the third person plural.

29. ESSE.

I. The Substantive Verb *esse*, *to be*, is thus inflected, having neither Gerund nor Supine, and only the Future Participle : —

PRINCIPAL PARTS: *sum*, *I am*; *esse*, *to be*; *ful*, *I have been*; *futurus*, *about to be*: — second stem, *fu*; third stem, *fūt*.

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
PRESENT. <i>I am.</i>			
SING. 1.	<i>sum, I am.</i>	<i>sim</i>	
2.	<i>ēs, thou art (you are).</i>	<i>sis</i>	
3.	<i>est, he (she, it) is.</i>	<i>sit</i>	
PLUR. 1.	<i>sūmūs, we are.</i>	<i>sīmūs</i>	
2.	<i>estīs, you are.</i>	<i>sītīs</i>	
3.	<i>sunt, they are.</i>	<i>sint</i>	
IMPERFECT. <i>I was.</i>			
SING. 1.	<i>eram</i>	<i>essem</i>	<i>fōrem</i>
2.	<i>erās</i>	<i>essēs</i>	<i>fores</i>
3.	<i>erāt</i>	<i>essēt</i>	<i>foret</i>
PLUR. 1.	<i>erāmūs</i>	<i>essēmūs</i>	
2.	<i>erātīs</i>	<i>essētīs</i>	
3.	<i>erant</i>	<i>essent</i>	<i>forent</i>

FUTURE. *I shall be.*

SING. 1.	ēro	fūtūrus sim
2.	ērīs	futurus sis
3.	ērīt	futurus sit
PLUR. 1.	ērimūs	futuri simus
2.	ērītīs	futuri sitis
3.	ērunt	futuri sint

PERFECT. *I was, or have been.*

SING. 1.	fuī	fuērim
2.	fuistī	fuēris
3.	fuīt	fuērit
PLUR. 1.	fuīmus	fuērīmus
2.	fuistis	fuērītīs
3.	fuērunt or fuēre	fuērint

PLUPERFECT. *I had been.*

SING. 1.	fuēram	fuissem
2.	fuērās	fuisSES
3.	fuērat	fuisSET
PLUR. 1.	fuerāmus	fuiSSōmus
2.	fuerātīs	fuiSSētīs
3.	fuērant	fuiSSent

FUTURE PERFECT. *I shall have been.*

SING. 1.	fuēro	fuerim
2.	fuēris	fueris
3.	fuērit	fuerit
PLUR. 1.	fuerīmus	fuerimus
2.	fuerītīs	fueritis
3.	fuerint	fuerint

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT. ēs, *be thou*: este, *be ye*.FUTURE. esto, *thou shalt be*, he shall be.estote, *ye shall be*: sunt, *they shall be*.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT. esse, *to be*.PERFECT. fuisse, *to have been*.FUTURE. fōrē or fūtūrus esse, *to be about to be*.RARE FORMS. escit, escunt (*Fut. Indic.*); siem, fuam (*Pres. Subj.*).

II. *Ābesse*, to be absent, and *ādesse*, to be present, are inflected in the same way with *esse*. The Present Participle of *abesse* is *absens*; *praesens* is used as the participle of *adesse*. The Imperative is wanting in both.

III. *Posse*, to be able (*pōtis esse*), is thus conjugated: —

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
PRESENT, <i>can.</i>	<i>possum</i> <i>pōtēs</i> <i>pōtest</i> <i>possumus</i> <i>potestis</i> <i>possunt</i>	<i>possim</i> <i>possis</i> <i>possit</i> <i>possimus</i> <i>possitis</i> <i>possint</i>
IMPERFECT, <i>could.</i>	<i>potēram</i>	<i>possem</i>
FUTURE.	<i>potēro</i>	
PERFECT.	<i>potui</i>	<i>potuērim</i>
PLUPERFECT.	<i>potuēram</i>	<i>potuissē</i>
FUT. PERFECT.	<i>potuēro</i>	
INFIN. PRES.	<i>posse</i>	PERF. <i>potuisse</i>
PARTICIPLE.	<i>potens, able.</i>	

IV. *Prodesse*, to help (*pro esse*), is conjugated like *esse*, retaining *d* when *pro* (*prod*) is followed by *e*: as, *prosum*, *prodes*, *prodest*, *prosumus*, *prodestis*, *prosunt*.

30. CONJUGATION.

I. Verbs have four regular Conjugations, distinguished by the connecting vowel of the Present Infinitive: these are —

1. *ā*: as, *vōc ā re*, to call.
2. *ē*: as, *mōn ē re*, to warn.
3. *ē*: as, *mitt ē re*, to send.
4. *ī*: as, *aud ī re*, to hear.

II. The Perfect and Supine Stems are regularly formed by adding to the Present Stem, in the several conjugations, —

- (1.) *āv*, *āt*: as, *vōco* *vōcāre* *vocāvī* *vocātum* call.
- (2.) *ēv*, *ēt*: as, *dēleo* *delēre* *delēvī* *delētum* wipe out.
- (3.) *a*, *t*: as, *carpo* *carpēre* *carpsī* *carptum* pluck.
- (4.) *iv*, *it*: as, *audio* *audire* *audīvī* *audītum* hear.

For full forms of Conjugation, see Tables.

In the second conjugation *ēv*, *ēt*, are usually modified into *ū*, *īt*: as,

mōneo, *monēre*, *monui*, *monitum*, *warn*.

III. The stem of the third conjugation usually ends in a consonant; this is combined with *s* in the same way as in nouns (§ 11, III. 1, 2, 3): as,

rēgo, *regēre*, *rexī*, *rectum*, *rule*.

mitto, *mittēre*, *misi*, *missum*, *send*.

Vowel stems of the third conjugation end in *i* or *u*. Of the former, five simply lengthen the stem in the perfect: as, *cāpio*, *cāpēre*, *cēpi*, *captum*, *take*; *fōdio*, *fōdi*, *fossūm*, *dig*.

But *cūpio*, *cūpīvi*, *desire*; *-cūtio* (*quātio*), *-cussī*, *strike*; *-lacio*, *-lexī*, *draw*; *pārio*, *pēpēri*, *produce*; *rāpio*, *rāpui*, *seize*; *sāpio*, *sāpīvi*, *taste*; *-spicio*, *-spexī*, *view*.

In these verbs, *i* is dropped when it would be followed by *ē* or *ī*: as in *cāpis*, *cāpit*, *cāpērem*; but retained in the future *cāpiet*.

A stem ending in *u* (*v*) is unchanged in the perfect: as, *ācuo*, *ācui*, *ācūtum*, *sharpen*; *volvo*, *volvi*, *vōlūtum*, *turn*.

But *fluo*, *flūxi*, *flow*; *struo*, *struxī*, *pile*.

IV. The perfect stem is often formed by simply lengthening the stem-vowel: as,

(1.)	<i>jūvo</i>	<i>juvāre</i>	<i>jūvi</i>	<i>jūtum</i>	<i>help</i> .
(2.)	<i>cleo</i>	<i>clēre</i>	<i>cīvi</i>	<i>cītum</i>	<i>rouse</i> .
(3.)	<i>fūgio</i>	<i>fugēre</i>	<i>fūgi</i>	<i>fugītum</i>	<i>flee</i> .
(4.)	<i>vēnio</i>	<i>venīre</i>	<i>vēni</i>	<i>ventum</i>	<i>come</i> .

Or by reduplicating the stem (omitted in most compounds): as,

- (1.) *do*, *dāre*, *dēdi*, *dātum*, *give* (compounds usually in the third conjugation: as, *addo*, *addēre*, *addīdi*, *addītum*, *add*.)
- (2.) *mordeo*, *mordēre*, *mōmordi*, *morsum*, *bite*.
- (3.) *curro*, *currere*, *cūcurri*, *cursum*, *run*.

Or by analogy of other conjugations: as,

(1.)	<i>sēco</i>	<i>secāre</i>	<i>secui</i>	<i>sectum</i>	<i>cut</i> .
(2.)	<i>māneo</i>	<i>manēre</i>	<i>mansī</i>	<i>mansum</i>	<i>wail</i> .
(3.)	<i>pēto</i>	<i>petēre</i>	<i>petīvi</i>	<i>petītum</i>	<i>seek</i> .
(4.)	<i>vincio</i>	<i>vincīre</i>	<i>vinxi</i>	<i>vincitum</i>	<i>bind</i> .

21. ACTIVE VOICE.—FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS.

1 INDIC.	SUBJ.	2 INDIC.	SUBJ.
<i>I call.</i>		<i>I warn.</i>	
VOC ō	voc ō	MON ō	mon ō
is	es	es	es
it	et	et	et
īmus	ēmus	ēmus	ēmus
itis	ētis	ētis	ētis
ant	ent	ent	ent

I called (was calling). IMPERFECT. *I warned (was warning).*

VOC ābam	voc ārem	MON ēbam	mon ērem
abās	ares	ebās	eres
abāt	aret	ebat	eret
abāmus	arēmus	ebāmus	erēmus
abātis	arētis	ebātis	erētis
abant	arent	ebant	erent

I will call.

FUTURE.

I will warn.

VOC ābo	vocat ūrus sī	MON ēbo	monit ūrus sī
abis	sis	ebis	sis
abit	sit	ebit	sit
abimus	-urī sīmus	ebimus	-urī sīmus
abitis	sitis	ebitis	sitis
abunt	sint	ebunt	sint

I called (have called). PERFECT. *I warned (have warned).*

VOC āvi	vocāv ěrim	MON i	monu ěrim
----------------	-------------------	--------------	------------------

I had called.

PLUPERFECT.

I had warned.

VOC āv ěram	vocav issem	MON ěram	monu issem
--------------------	--------------------	-----------------	-------------------

I shall have called. FUTURE PERFECT. *I shall have warned.*

VOC āv ěro	(vocav erim)	MON ěro	(monu erim)
-------------------	----------------------	----------------	---------------------

SING.

PL.

IMPERATIVE. SING.

PL.

3rd SING. VOC ā	voc āte	MON ē	mon ēte
4th SING. VOC āto	voc atōte, anto	MON ēto	mon etōte, ento

3rd SING.

PERF. INFINITIVE. PRES.

PERF.

VOC āre	vocāv isse	MON ěre	monu isse
----------------	-------------------	----------------	------------------

3rd SING.

FUT. PARTICIPLES. PRES.

FUT.

VOC ans	vocāt ūrus	MON ens	monit ūrus
----------------	-------------------	----------------	-------------------

(GERUND.)

SUPINE.

GERUND.

SUPINE.

VOC andum	vocāt um, u	MON endum	monit um, u
------------------	--------------------	------------------	--------------------

THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS.

III. INDIC. SUBJ. IV. INDIC. SUBJ.

I rule.

PRESENT.

I hear.

reg o	reg am	audio	aud iam
is	as	is	ias
it	at	it	iat
imus	amus	imus	iamus
itis	atis	itis	iatīs
unt	ant	iunt	iant

I ruled (was ruling). IMPERFECT. I heard (was hearing).

reg ēbam	reg ērem	aud iēbam	aud irem
ebas	eres	iebas	ires
ebat	eret	iebat	iret
ebāmus	erēmus	iebāmus	irēmus
ebātis	erētis	iebātis	irētis
ebant	erent	iebant	irent

I will rule.

FUTURE.

I will hear.

reg am	recturus sim	aud iam	auditus sim
es	sis	ies	sis
et	sit	iet	sit
ēmus	recturi simus	iemus	audituri simus
etis	sitis	ietis	sitis
ent	sint	ient	sint

I ruled (have ruled). PERFECT. I heard (have heard).

rex i	rex ērim	+	audiv i	audiv ērim
-------	----------	---	---------	------------

I had ruled.

PLUPERFECT.

I had heard.

rex ēram	rex issem	audiv ēram	audiv issem
----------	-----------	------------	-------------

I shall have ruled. FUTURE PERFECT. I shall have heard,

rex ēro	(rex ērim)	audiv ēro	(audiv ērim)
---------	------------	-----------	--------------

SING.

PL.

IMPERATIVE, SING.

PL.

P. reg ē	reg ite	aud i	aud ite
F. reg ito	reg itote, unto	aud ito	aud itote, iunto
PRES.	PERF.	INFINITIVE, PRES.	PERF.
reg ēre	rex isse	aud ire	audiv isse
PRES.	FUT.	PARTICIPLES, PRES.	FUT.
reg ens	rect urus	aud iens	audīt urus
GERUND.	SUPINE.	GERUND.	SUPINE.
reg endum	rect um, u	aud iendum	audīt um, u

32. PASSIVE VOICE.—FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS.

I INDIC.	SUBJ.	II INDIC.	SUBJ.	
<i>I am (being) called.</i>		PRESENT.	<i>I am (being) warned.</i>	
voc or	voc er	mon eor	mon ear	
āris, re	ēris, re	ēris, re	eāris, re	
atur	etur	etur	eatur	
amur	emur	emur	eamur	
amini	emini	emini	eamini	
antur	entur	entur	eantur	
<i>I was (being) called.</i>		IMPERFECT.	<i>I was (being) warned.</i>	
voc ābar	voc ārer	mon ēbar	mon ērer	
abāris, re	arēris, re	ebāris, re	erēris, re	
abatur	arētur	ebatur	eretur	
abamur	aremur	ebamur	eremur	
abamini	aremini	ebamini	eremini	
abantur	arentur	ebantur	erentur	
<i>I shall be called.</i>		FUTURE.	<i>I shall be warned.</i>	
voc abor		mon ēbor		
abēris, re		ebēris, re		
abītur		ebītur		
abīmur		ebīmur		
abimini		ebimini		
abuntur		ebuntur		
<i>I was called.</i>		PERFECT.	<i>I was warned.</i>	
vocatus sum	vocatus sim	monītus sum	monītus sim	
<i>I had been called.</i>		PLUPERFECT.	<i>I had been warned.</i>	
vocatus eram,	essem	monītus eram,	essem	
		FUTURE PERFECT.	(Shall have been.)	
vocatus ero		monītus ero		
SING.	PL.	IMPERATIVE.	SING.	PL.
P. voc āre	voc amini	mon ēre	mon emini	
F. voc ātor	voc antor	mon ētor	mon entor	
		INFINITIVE.		
PRES.	voc āri	mon ēri		
PERF.	vocātus esse	monītus esse		
FUT.	vocatum iri	monitum iri		
PERF.	GER.	PARTICIPLES.	PERF.	GER.
voc ātus	voc andus	mon ītus	mon endus	

THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS.

III. INDIC. SUBJ.		IV. INDIC. SUBJ.	
<i>I am (being) ruled.</i>		PRESENT.	<i>I am (being) heard.</i>
reg or	reg ar	aud ior	aud iar
ēris, re	āris, re	iris, re	iāris, re
itur	atur	itur	iatur
imur	amur	imur	iāmur
imini	amini	imini	iamini
untur	antur	iuntur	iantur
<i>I was (being) ruled.</i>		IMPERFECT.	<i>I was (being) heard.</i>
reg ēbar	reg ērer	aud iēbar	aud irer
ebāris, re	erēris, re	iebāris, re	irēris, re
ebatur	eretur	iebatur	iretur
ebamur	eremur	iebamur	iremur
ebamini	eremini	iebamini	iremini
ebantur	erentur	iebantur	irentur
<i>I shall be ruled.</i>		FUTURE.	<i>I shall be heard.</i>
regar		audiar	
ēris, re		iēris, re	
etur		ietur	
emur		iemur	
emini		iemini	
entur		ientur	
<i>I was ruled.</i>		PERFECT.	<i>I was heard.</i>
rectus sum	rectus sim	auditus sum	auditus sim
<i>I had been ruled.</i>		PLUPERFECT.	<i>I had been heard.</i>
rectus eram,	essem	auditus eram,	essem
FUTURE PERFECT. (<i>Shall have been.</i>)			
rectus ero		auditus ero	
SING.	PL.	IMPERATIVE.	SING.
reg ēre	reg imini	aud ire	aud imini
reg itor	reg untor	aud itor	aud iuntor
INFINITIVE.			
PRES.	reg i	aud iri	
PERF.	rectus esse	auditus esse	
FUT.	rectum iri	auditum iri	
PERF.	GER.	PARTICIPLES.	PERF.
rectus	regendus	auditus	audiendus

Table 7.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

I. ACTIVE VOICE.		II. PASSIVE VOICE.		
INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.	
PRESENT, <i>I love.</i>		PRESENT, <i>I am loved.</i>		
a'mo, <i>I love</i>	a'mem	a'mor	a'mer	
a'mas, <i>thou lovest</i>	a'mes	ama'ris (re)	ame'ris (re)	
a'mat, <i>he loves</i>	a'met	ama'tur	ame'tur	
ama'mus, <i>we love</i>	ame'mus	ama'nur	ame'nur	
ama'tis, <i>you love</i>	ame'tis	amam'ini	amem'ini	
a'mant, <i>they love</i>	a'ment	aman'tur	amen'tur	
IMPERFECT, <i>I loved (used to love).</i>		IMPERFECT, <i>I was loved.</i>		
ama'bam	ama'rem	ama'bar	ama'rer	
ama'bas	ama'res	amaba'ris (re)	amare'ris (re)	
ama'bat	ama'ret	amaba'tur	amare'tur	
amaba'mus	amare'mus	amaba'mur	amare'mur	
amaba'tis	amare'tis	amabam'ini	amarem'ini	
ama'bant	ama'rent	amaban'tur	amaren'tur	
FUTURE, <i>I shall or will love.</i>		FUTURE, <i>I shall be loved.</i>		
ama'bo	amatu'rus	ama'bor	futu'rum sit ut	
ama'bis	sim, &c.	amab'eris (re)	a'mer, &c.	
ama'bit		amab'itur		
amab'imus		amab'imur		
amab'itis		amabim'ini		
ama'bunt		amabun'tur		
PERFECT, <i>I loved (have loved).</i>		PERFECT, <i>I was (have been) loved.</i>		
ama'vi	amav'erim	ama'tus sum	ama'tus sim	
amavis'ti	amav'eris	ama'tus es	ama'tus sis	
ama'vit	amav'erit	ama'tus est	ama'tus sit	
amav'imus	amaver'imus	ama'ti sumus	ama'ti simus	
amavis'tis	amaver'itis	ama'ti estis	ama'ti sitis	
amave'runt, -e're	amav'erint	ama'ti sunt	ama'ti sint	
PLUPERFECT, <i>I had loved.</i>		PLUPERFECT, <i>I had been loved.</i>		
amav'eram	amavis'sem	ama'tus eram	ama'tus es'sem	
amav'eras	amavis'ses	ama'tus eras	ama'tus es'ses	
amav'erat	amavis'set	ama'tus erat	ama'tus es'set	
amavera'mus	amavis'semus	ama'ti eramus	ama'ti esse'mus	
amavera'tis	amavis'setis	ama'ti era'tis	ama'ti esse'tis	
amav'erant	amavis'sent	ama'ti e'rant	ama'ti es'sent	
FUTURE PERFECT, <i>I shall have loved.</i>		FUTURE PERFECT, <i>I shall have been loved.</i>		
amav'ero	amav'erim	ama'tus ero	ama'tus sim	
amav'eris	&c.	ama'tus eris	&c.	
amav'erit		ama'tus erit		
amaver'imus		ama'ti er'imus		
amaver'itis		ama'ti er'itis		
amav'erint		ama'ti e'runt		
SING.	PLUR.	IMPERATIVE.	SING.	PLUR.
PR. a'ma, <i>love thou</i>	PR. ama'te, <i>love ye</i>	ama're	amam'ini	
F. ama'to	amatote	—	—	
ama'to	aman'to	ama'tor	aman'tor	
INFINITIVE.				
PR. ama're, <i>to love</i>	Pf. amavis'se, <i>to Pr. ama'ri</i>	Pf. ama'tus esse		
F. amatu'rus esse	<i>(have loved)</i>	F. ama'tum iri	<i>(ama'tus fo're)</i>	
PARTICIPLES.				
PR. a'mans	FUT. amatu'rus	PERF. ama'tus	GER. aman'dus, a, um	
<i>loving</i>	<i>about to love</i>	<i>loved</i>	<i>to be loved.</i>	
GER. aman'dum, <i>loving</i>		SUP. ama'tum, ama'tu, <i>to love</i>		

Table 8.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

I. ACTIVE VOICE.

INDIC. SUBJ.

PRESENT, *I warn.*

mo'neo, <i>I warn</i>	mo'neam
mo'nes, <i>you warn</i>	mo'neas
mo'net, <i>he warns</i>	mo'neat
mo'ne'mus [ȝc.]	mo'neam'mus
mo'ne'tis	mo'neat'tis
mo'nent	mo'neant

IMPERFECT, *I was warning.*

mo'nebam	mo'ne'rem
mo'nebas	mo'ne'res
mo'nebat	mo'ne'ret
mo'nebam'mus	mo'ne're'mus
mo'nebat'tis	mo'ne're'tis
mo'nebant	mo'ne'rent

FUTURE, *I shall warn.*

mo'nebo	monitu'rus sim
mo'nebis	monitu'rus sis
mo'nebit	monitu'rus sit
mo'nebim'us	monitu'ri simus
mo'nebitis	monitu'ri sitis
mo'nebunt	monitu'ri sint

PERFECT, *I warned (have warned).*

mon'ui	monu'erim
monu'is'ti	monu'eris
mon'uit	monu'erit
monu'im'us	monuer'im'us
monu'is'tis	monuer'itis
monue'runt (re)	monu'erint

PLUPERFECT, *I had warned.*

monu'eram	monu'is'sem
monu'eram	monu'is'ses
monu'erat	monu'is'set
monuera'mus	monu'is'se'mus
monuera'tis	monu'is'se'tis
monu'erant	monu'is'sent

FUTURE PERFECT, *I shall have warned.*

monu'ero	monu'erim
monu'eris	&c.
monu'erit	
monuer'im'us	
monuer'itis	
monu'erint	

SING.	PLUR.
PR. mo'ne	mo'ne'te
F. mo'ne'to	moneto'te
mo'ne'to	monen'to

SING.	PLUR.
PR. mo'ne	mo'ne'te
F. mo'ne'to	moneto'te
mo'ne'to	monen'to

IMPERATIVE.	SING.	PLUR.
mo'ne're	mo'ne'tor	monem'ini
mo'ne'tor		monen'tor

INFINITIVE.

PR. mo'ne're	PR. monu'is'se	PR. mo'ne'ri	PR. mo'nitus esse
F. monitu'rus esse		F. mon'itum iri	(mon'itus fo're)

PARTICIPLES.

mo'ne'ns	monitu'rus	mon'itus	monen'dus
GER. monen'dum, di, &c.		SUP. mon'itum, mon'itu	

II. PASSIVE VOICE.

INDIC. SUBJ.

PRESENT, *I am warned.*

mo'neor	mo'near
mo'ne'ris (re)	mo'ne'ris (re)
mo'ne'tur	mo'ne'tur
mo'ne'mur	mo'ne'mur
monem'ini	monem'ini
monen'tur	monen'tur

IMPERFECT, *I was warned.*

mo'ne'bar	mo'ne'rer
mo'neba'ris (re)	mo'ne're'ris (re)
mo'neba'tur	mo'ne're'tur
mo'neba'mur	mo'ne're'mur
mo'nebam'ini	mo'ne'rem'ini
mo'neban'tur	mo'ne'ren'tur

FUTURE, *I shall be warned.*

mo'nebor	futu'rum sit ut
mo'nebe'ris (re)	mo'ne'ar,
mo'neb'itur	-a'ris, &c.
mo'neb'imur	
mo'nebim'ini	
mo'nebun'tur	

PERFECT, *I was (have been) warned.*

mon'itus sum	mon'itus sim
mon'itus es	mon'itus sis
mon'itus est	mon'itus sit
mon'iti sumus	mon'iti simus
mon'iti estis	mon'iti sitis
mon'iti sunt	mon'iti sint

PLUPERFECT, *I had been warned.*

mon'itus eram	mon'itus essem
mon'itus eras	mon'itus esses
mon'itus erat	mon'itus esset
mon'iti era'm'us	mon'iti esse'mus
mon'iti era'tis	mon'iti esse'tis
mon'iti erant	mon'iti essent

FUTURE PERFECT, *I shall have been warned.*

mon'itus ero	mon'itus sim
mon'itus eris	&c.
mon'itus erit	
mon'iti er'im'us	
mon'iti er'itis	
mon'iti erunt	

Table 9.

THIRD CONJUGATION (*Consonant Stem*).

I. ACTIVE VOICE.

INDIO. SUBJ.

PRESENT, *I rule.*

re'go, <i>I rule.</i>	re'gam
re'gis, <i>thou rulest.</i>	re'gas
re'git, <i>he rules.</i>	re'gat
reg'imus, <i>we rule.</i>	rega'mus
reg'itis, <i>you rule.</i>	rega'tis
regunt, <i>they rule.</i>	regant

IMPERFECT, *I was ruling.*

rege'bam	reg'erem
rege'bas	reg'eres
rege'bat	reg'eret
regeba'mus	regere'mus
regeba'tis	regere'tis
rege'bant	reg'erent

FUTURE, *I shall rule.*

re'gam	rectu'rus sim
re'ges	rectu'rus sis
re'get	rectu'rus sit
rege'mus	rectu'ri simus
rege'tis	rectu'ri sitis
re'gent	rectu'ri sint

PERFECT, *I ruled (have ruled).*

rex'i	rex'erim
rexis'ti	rex'eris
rex'it	rex'erit
rex'imus	rexer'imus
rexis'tis	rexer'itis
rexerunt (re)	rex'erint

PLUPERFECT, *I had ruled.*

rex'eram	rexis'sem
rex'eras	rexis'ses
rex'erat	rexis'set
rexera'mus	rexisse'mus
rexera'tis	rexisse'tis
rex'erant	rexis'sent

FUTURE PERFECT, *I shall have ruled.*

rex'ere	rex'erim
rex'eris	&c.
rex'erit	
rexer'imus	
rexer'itis	
rex'erint	

II. PASSIVE VOICE.

INDIO. SUBJ.

PRESENT, *I am ruled.*

re'gor	re'gar
reg'eris (re)	rega'ris (re)
reg'itur	rega'tur
reg'imur	rega'mur
regim'ini	regam'ini
regun'tur	regan'tur

IMPERFECT, *I was ruled.*

rege'bar	re'gerer
regeba'ris (re)	regere'ris (re)
regeba'tur	regere'tur
regeba'mur	regere'mur
regebam'ini	regorem'ini
regeban'tur	regeren'tur

FUTURE, *I shall be ruled.*

re'gar	futu'rum sit ut
rege'ris (re)	re'gar
rege'tur	rega'ris, &c.
rege'mur	
regem'ini	
regen'tur	

PERFECT, *I was (have been) ruled.*

rec'tus sum	rec'tus sim
rec'tus es	rec'tus sis
rec'tus est	rec'tus sit
rec'ti sumus	rec'ti simus
rec'ti estis	rec'ti sitis
rec'ti sunt	rec'ti sint

PLUPERFECT, *I had been ruled.*

rec'tus eram	rec'tus essem
rec'tus eras	rec'tus esses
rec'tus erat	rec'tus esset
rec'ti eramus	rec'ti essemus
rec'ti eratis	rec'ti essetis
rec'ti erant	rec'ti essent

FUTURE PERFECT, *I shall have been ruled.*

rec'tus ero	rec'tus sim
rec'tus eris	&c.
rec'tus erit	
rec'ti erimus	
rec'ti eritis	
rec'ti erunt	

SING.	PLUR.	IMPERATIVE.	SING.	PLUR.
Pr. 2. re'ge	reg'ite	reg'ere		regim'ini
F. 2. reg'ito	regito'te			
3. reg'ito	regun'to	re'gitor		regun'tor

INFINITIVE.

Pr. reg'ere	Pf. rexis'se	Pr. re'gi	Pf. rec'tus esse
F. rectu'rus esse		F. rec'tum iri (rec'tus fo're)	

PARTICIPLES.

re'gens.	rectu'rus	rec'tus	regen'dus
Ger. regen'dum, di, &c.		Sup. rec'tum, rec'tu	

Table 10.

THIRD CONJUGATION (*Vowel Stem*).

I. ACTIVE VOICE.

INDIC.	SUBJ.
PRESENT, <i>I take.</i>	
ca'pio, <i>I take.</i>	ca'piam
ca'pis, <i>thou takest.</i>	ca'pias
ca'pit, <i>he takes.</i>	ca'piat
cap'imus, <i>we take.</i>	capia'mus
cap'itis, <i>you take.</i>	capia'tis
ca'piunt, <i>they take.</i>	ca'piant

IMPERFECT, *I was taking.*

capie'bam	cap'erem
capie'bas	cap'eres
capie'bat	cap'eret
capieba'mus	capere'mus
capieba'tis	capere'tis
capie'bant	cap'erent

FUTURE, *I shall take.*

ca'piam	captu'rus sim
ca'pies	captu'rus sis
ca'piet	captu'rus sit
capie'mus	captu'ri simus
capie'tis	captu'ri sitis
capient	captu'ri sint

PERFECT, *I took (have taken).*

ce'pi	cep'erim
cepis'ti	cep'eris
ce'pit	cep'erit
cep'imus	ceper'imus
cepis'tis	ceper'itis
cepe'runt (re)	cep'erint

PLUPERFECT, *I had taken.*

cep'eram	cepis'sem
cep'eras	cepis'ses
cep'erat	cepis'set
cepera'mus	cepiasse'mus
cepera'tis	cepiasse'tis
ceperant	cepis'sent

FUTURE PERFECT, *I shall have taken.*

cep'ero	cep'erim
cep'eris	&c.
cep'erit	
ceper'imus	
ceper'itis	
ceper'int	

II. PASSIVE VOICE.

INDIC.	SUBJ.
PRESENT, <i>I am taken.</i>	
ca'pior	ca'piar
cap'eris (re)	capis'ris (re)
cap'itur	capis'tur
cap'imur	capis'mur
capim'ini	capiam'ini
capiun'tur	capian'tur

IMPERFECT, *I was taken.*

capie'bar	cap'erer
capieba'ris (re)	capere'ris (re)
capieba'tur	capere'tur
capieba'mur	capere'mur
capiebam'ini	caperem'ini
capieban'tur	caperen'tur

FUTURE, *I shall be taken.*

ca'piar	futu'rum sit ut
capie'ris (re)	ca'piar
capie'tur	-a'ris, &c.
capie'mur	
capiem'ini	
capien'tur	

PERFECT, *I was (have been) taken.*

cap'tus sum	cap'tus sim
cap'tus es	cap'tus sis
cap'tus est	cap'tus sit
cap'ti sumus	cap'ti simus
cap'ti estis	cap'ti sitis
cap'ti sunt	cap'ti sint

PLUPERFECT, *I had been taken.*

cap'tus eram	cap'tus essem
cap'tus eras	cap'tus esses
cap'tus erat	cap'tus esset
cap'ti eramus	cap'ti essemus
cap'ti eratis	cap'ti essetis
cap'ti erant	cap'ti essent

FUTURE PERFECT, *I shall have been taken.*

cap'tus ero	cap'tus sim
cap'tus eris	&c.
cap'tus erit	
cap'ti erimus	
cap'ti eritis	
cap'ti erunt	

SING.	PLUR.	IMPERATIVE.	SING.	PLUR.
PR. 2. ca'pe	cap'ite	cap'ere		capim'ini
F. 2. cap'ito	capito'te			
3. cap'ito	capiu'to	cap'itor		capiu'tor

INFINITIVE.

PR. cap'ere	PF. cepis'se	PR. ca'pi	PF. cap'tus esse
F. captu'rus esse		F. cap'tum iri (cap'tus fo're)	

PARTICIPLES.

ca'piens	captu'rus	cap'tus	capien'dus
GER. capien'dum, di, &c.		SUP. cap'tum, cap'tu	

Table 11.

FOURTH CONJUGATION

I. ACTIVE VOICE.

INDIC. SUBJ.

PRESENT, *I hear.*

au'dio, <i>I hear.</i>	au'diam
au'dis, <i>thou hearest.</i>	au'dias
au'dit, <i>he hears.</i>	au'diat
audi'mus, <i>we hear.</i>	audia'mus
audi'tis, <i>you hear.</i>	audia'tis
au'diunt, <i>they hear.</i>	au'diant

IMPERFECT, *I was hearing.*

audie'bam	audi'rem
audie'bas	audi'res
audie'bat	audi'ret
audieba'mus	audire'mus
audieba'tis	audire'tis
audie'bant	audi'rent

FUTURE, *I shall hear.*

au'diam	auditu'rus sim
au'dies	auditu'rus sis
au'diet	auditu'rus sit
audie'mus	auditu'ri simus
audie'tis	auditu'ri sitis
au'dient	auditu'ri sint

PERFECT, *I heard (have heard).*

audi'vi	audiv'erim
audivis'ti	audiv'eris
audi'vit	audiv'erit
audiv'imus	audiver'imus
audivis'tis	audiver'itis
audive'runt (re)	audiv'erint

PLUPERFECT, *I had heard.*

audiv'eram	audivis'sem
audiv'eras	audivis'ses
audiv'erat	audivis'set
audivera'mus	audivisse'mus
audivera'tis	audivisse'tis
audiv'erant	audivis'sent

FUTURE PERFECT, *I shall have heard.*

audiv'ero	audiv'erim
audiv'eris	&c.
audiv'erit	
audiver'imus	
audiver'itis	
audiv'erint	

SING.

Pr. 2. au'di
F. 2. audi'to
8. audi'to

PLUR.

audi'te
audito'te
audiun'to

IMPERATIVE.

audi're
audi'tor

SING.

PLUR.

audim'ini
audiun'tor

INFINITIVE.

Pr. audi're	Pr. audivis'se	Pr. audi'ri	Pr. audi'tus esse
F. auditu'rus esse		F. audi'tum iri	(audi'tus fo're)

PARTICIPLES.

au'diens	auditu'rus	audi'tus	audien'dus
GER. audien'dum, di, &c.		SUP. audi'tum, audi'tu	

II. PASSIVE VOICE.

INDIC. SUBJ.

PRESENT, *I am heard.*

au'dior	au'diar
audi'ris (re)	audia'ris (re)
audi'tur	audia'tur
audi'mur	audia'mur
audim'ini	audiam'ini
audiun'tur	audian'tur

IMPERFECT, *I was heard.*

audie'bar	audi'rer
audieba'ris (re)	audire'ris (re)
audieba'tur	audire'tur
audieba'mur	audire'mur
audiebam'ini	audi'rem'ini
audieba'tur	audiren'tur

FUTURE, *I shall be heard.*

au'diar	futu'rum sit ut
audie'ris (re)	audi'ar,
audie'tur	-a'ris, &c.
audie'mur	
audiem'ini	
audien'tur	

PERFECT, *I was (have been) heard.*

audi'tus sum	audi'tus sim
audi'tus es	audi'tus sis
audi'tus est	audi'tus sit
audi'ti sumus	audi'ti simus
audi'ti estis	audi'ti sitis
audi'ti sunt	audi'ti sint

PLUPERFECT, *I had been heard.*

audi'tus eram	audi'tus essem
audi'tus eras	audi'tus esses
audi'tus erat	audi'tus esset
audi'ti eramus	audi'ti essemus
audi'ti eratis	audi'ti essetis
audi'ti erant	audi'ti essent

FUTURE PERFECT, *I shall have been heard.*

audi'tus ero	audi'tus sim
audi'tus eris	&c.
audi'tus erit	
audi'ti erimus	
audi'ti eritis	
audi'ti erunt	

Table 12.

Esse, to be, AND ITS COMPOUNDS.

INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC. <i>I can</i>	SUBJ. PRESENT.	INDIC. <i>I help</i>	SUBJ.
sum, <i>I am</i>	sim	possum	possim	prosum,	prosim
es, <i>thou art</i>	sis	potes	possis	prodes	prosis
est, <i>he is</i>	sit	potest	possit	prodest	prosit
sumus	simus	pos'sumus	possim'us	pro'sumus	prosim'us
estis	sitis	potes'tis	possit'tis	prodestis	prosit'tis
sunt	sint	possunt	possint	prosunt	prosint
<i>I was</i>		<i>I could</i>	IMPERFECT.	<i>I helped</i>	
eram	essem	pot'eram	possem	prod'eram	prodessem
eras	esses	pot'eras	posses	prod'eras	prodesSES
erat	esset	pot'erat	posset	prod'erat	prodesset
era'mus	esse'mus	potera'mus	posse'mus	prodera'mus	prodessemus
era'tis	esse'tis	potera'tis	posse'tis	prodera'tis	prodessetis
erant	essent	pot'erant	possent	prod'erant	prodesSENT
FUTURE.					
ero, <i>I shall be</i>		pot'ero, <i>I shall be able,</i>		prod'ero, <i>I shall help,</i>	
eris &c		pot'eris &c.		prod'eris &c.	
erit		pot'erit		prod'erit	
er'imus		poter'imus		proder'imus	
er'itis		poter'itis		proder'itis	
erunt		pot'erunt		prod'erunt	
<i>I was or have been</i>		PERFECT.			
fui	fu'erim	potui	potuerim	profui	profu'erim
fuiſti	fu'eris	potuisti	potu'eris	profuisti	profu'eris
fuit	fu'erit	potuit	potu'erit	profuit	profu'erit
fu'imus	fuer'imus	potu'imus	potuerimus	profu'imus	profuerimus
fuiſtis	fuer'itis	potuistis	potuer'itis	profuistis	profuer'itis
fue'runt	fu'erint	potue'runt	potu'erint	profue'runt	profu'erint
or fue're		or potu'ere		or profue're	
<i>I had been</i>		PLUPERFECT.			
fu'eram	fuiſſem	potu'eram	potuiſſem	profu'eram	profuiſſem
fu'eras	fuiſſes	potu'eras	potuiſſes	profu'eras	profuiſſes
fu'erat	fuiſſet	potu'erat	potuiſſet	profu'erat	profuiſſet
fuera'-	fuiſſe'-	potuera'-	potuiſſe'-	profuera'-	profuiſſe'-
mus	mus	mus	mus	mus	mus
fuera'tis	fuiſſe'tis	potuera'tis	potuiſſe'tis	profuera'tis	profuiſſe'tis
fu'erant	fuiſſent	potu'erant	potuiſſent	profu'erant	profuiſſent
FUTURE PERFECT.					
fu'ero, <i>I shall have been</i>		potu'ero		profu'ero	
fu'eris		potu'eris		profu'eris	
fu'erit		potu'erit		profu'erit	
fuer'imus		potuer'imus		profuer'imus	
fuer'itis		potue'ritis		profuer'itis	
fu'erint		potu'erint		profu'erint	
IMPERATIVE.					
PR.	es, be thou	este, be ye			
FUT.	esto, thou shalt be	estote, ye shall be			
	sunto, they shall be				
INFINITIVE.					
esse, to be	fuisse, to have been	posse	potuisse	prodesse	profuisse
fore or futurus	esse, to be about to be				
PARTICIPLES.					
FUT. futurus, about to be		[potens, powerful.]		profuturus	
Esse is also combined with the prepositions ab, ad, de, in, inter, ob, prae, sub, super.					

33. RULES OF CONJUGATION.

I. The Conjugations differ from one another only in the tenses formed upon the First or Present Stem.

All irregularities are either in the tenses derived from the first stem, or in the formation of the other stems; never in the terminations added to them.

The tenses formed upon the first stem in the active voice are also formed upon it in the passive.

Tenses of the second stem are inflected like the corresponding tenses of *esse*: as,

PERF. SING. **vocavi, vocavisti, vocavit;**

PLUR. **vocavimus, vocavistis, vocavērunt or vocavēre.**

II. In these inflections it will be observed, that —

1. The Imperfect Subjunctive is formed from the Present Infinitive by adding *m*; and the Pluperfect Subjunctive from the Perfect Infinitive in the same manner.

2. The passive tenses of the first stem are formed from the corresponding ones in the active, by changing *m* into *r*; or, where the active ends in *o*, by adding *r*.

3. The Imperative Passive is the same in form with the Present Infinitive Active.

III. 1. In tenses formed from the Second Stem, *v* between two vowels is often suppressed (syncopated), and the vowels in some cases made one; as *amasse* for *amavisse*, *flestis* for *flevistis*, *audieram* for *audiveram*. This takes place regularly in the compounds of *eo, go* (fourth conj.); as, *abii* for *abivi*, *I went away*.

So *s*, when it would be repeated: as, *dixti* for *dixisti*.

2. Four verbs, *dicō, dūco, facio, and fero*, with several of their compounds, drop the vowel-termination of the Imperative, making *dic, dūc, fāc, fēr*: as, *dic mihi, tell me*; *aufer, take away*. For the imperative of *scio, know*, *scito* is always used in the singular, and *scitōte* usually in the plural.

3. The following ancient forms are seldom found except in poetry: —

- a. In the fourth conjugation, *-ībām, -ībo*, for *-iēbām, -iam* (fut.);
- b. In the present subjunctive, *-im*: as in *duim, perduim*;
- c. In the perfect subjunctive and future perfect, *-so, -sim*: as, *fāxo, faxim*, from *facio*; *habesso*, from *habeo*.
- d. In the passive infinitive, *-ier*; as *āmārier* for *amāri*.

34. FORMS OF CONJUGATION.

I. The principal parts of a verb, which determine its conjugation throughout, are the Present Indicative and Infinitive (first stem); the Perfect Indicative (second stem); and Supine (third stem): as,

vōc o, vōc āre, vōc āvi, vōc āt um, call.

NOTE. — Few verbs have a Supine actually in use.

The Synopsis of a verb consists of the first person singular of each tense, arranged in regular order: as, of **cōgo (con āgo), cogēre, coēgi, coactum**: —

	Pres.	Imperf.	Fut.	Perf.	Plup.	Fut. Perf.
IND.	cōgo	cogēbam	cogam	coēgi	coegēram	coegēro
SUBJ.	cogam	cogērem		coēgērim	coegissem	
IMP.	coge ,	cogito .	INF.	cogēre, coegisse, coacturus esse.		
PARTS.	cogens, coacturus, coactus, cogendus					

The synopsis may be given of any person: as, of the impersonal verb **dēcet** (3d person singular): —

IND. **decet decēbat decēbit decuit decuērat decuērit**
 SUBJ. **deceat, -cēret, decuērit, -isset; INF. decēre, decuisse.**

II. In those tenses which are formed by uniting the verb **esse, to be**, with the participles of the verb (see §§ 27, VI. and 40), it is very common to omit **est** and **esse**: as,

Allōbrōgībus sese vel persuāsūros [esse] existimābant, vel vi coactūros [esse]; *they reckoned that they should either persuade the Allobroges or compel them.* — Cæs. B. G. I. 6.

So when **est** or **esse** is used simply as a copula (§ 45 3); as, **maxīmi risus,** *there was the greatest merriment.* — Cic. Brut. 75.

Frequently the perfect participle is used as an adjective, with **esse**, and having the same form as a passive tense; as,

lōcus qui nunc saeptus est, *the place which is now enclosed.* — Liv. I. 8. (*saeptus est* might also mean, *was enclosed*).

quo est dētestābilior istorum immānitas, qui lācērārunt omni scēlère patriam, et in eā fundītus dēlendā oc-cūpāti sunt et fuērunt, *hence the more hateful is the cruelty of those [authors of the civil war] who have rent their country with every crime, and are now and have been engaged in utterly ruining her.* — Cic. Off. I. 17.

Table 13.

IRREGULAR CONJUGATION.—I.

The following list contains the Stem-endings of all the simple Verbs which form their Perfect and Supine Stems otherwise than by § 30, ii. iii. Those marked † have also regular forms.

Forms preceded by a hyphen are found only in compounds.

Compounds generally change *ā* or *ē* of the stem into *i*.

I.			
torepo, ui, it-, resound.	strideo, stridi, whiz.	figo, fixi, fix-, fix.	
cubo, ui, it-, lie down.	suadeo, suasi, suas-, persuade.	findo, fidi, fissa-, split.	
do, dedi, dāt-, give.	teneo, tenui, tent-, hold.	figo, nxi, ct-, fashion.	
domo, ui, it-, subdue.	tergeo, rsi, ters-, wipe.	fiecto, xi, flex-, bend.	
frico, cui, tēt-, rub.	tondeo, totondi, tons-, shear.	fluo, fluxi, flux-, flow.	
juvo, juvi, jut-, help.	torqueo, rsi, rt-, twist.	fodio, fodi, foss-, dig.	
mico, micui, glitter.	torreo, ui, tost-, roast.	frango, fregi, fract-, break.	
tneco, necui, ct-, kill.	turgeo, tursi, swell.	fremo, ui, it-, roar.	
plico, cui, cit-, fold.	urgeo, ursi, urge.	frendo, fres-, as-, gnash.	
ipoto, — pot-, drink.	video, vidi, vis-, see.	fugio, fugi, fugit-, flee.	
seco, cui, ct-, cut.	voveo, vovi, vot-, vow.	fundo, fudi, fus-, pour.	
sono, ui, it-, sound.	III.	furo, furui, rage.	
sto, steti, stat-, stand.	abdo, didi, dit-, hide.	gemo, ui, it-, groan.	
tono, ui, it-, thunder.	ago, egi, act-, drive.	gero, gessi, gest-, bear.	
veto, ui, it-, forbid.	alo, ui, alt- (it-), nourish.	gigno, genui, it-, beget.	
II.	arcesso, ivi, it-, summon.	ico, ici, ict-, strike.	
algeo, alsī, be cold.	bibo, bibi, bibit-, drink.	incesso, ivi, attack.	
ardco, arsi, ars-, burn.	cado, cecidi, cas-, fall.	iacio, jeci, jact-, throw.	
augco, xi, ct-, increase.	cedo, cecidi, cess-, cut.	laccio, sivi, it-, provoke.	
caveo, cavi, caut-, care.	cano, cecini, cant-, sing.	laedo, laesi, laes-, hurt.	
censeo, nsui, ns-, value.	capesso, sivi, undertake.	lambo, bi, bit-, lick.	
cico, civi, cit-, excite.	capio, cepi, capt-, take.	lavo, lavi, lot-, laut-, wash (reg. 1st conj.).	
deleo, evi, et-, destroy.	cedo, cessi, cess-, move.	lego, gi, -xi, ct-, gather.	
doceo, cui, doct-, teach.	-cello, -ui, -cels-, impel.	-licio, lexi, lect-, allure.	
faveo, vi, faut-, favor.	-cendo, di, cens-, kindle.	lino, vi (levi), lit-, smear.	
ferveo, vi, bui, boil.	cerno, crevi, cret-, de- -cree.	linquo, -liqui, licit-, leave.	
fleo, flevi, flet-, weep.	cingo, cinxi, net-, gird.	ludo, lusi, lus-, play.	
foveo, fovi, fot-, cherish.	claudio, si, claus-, shut.	luo, lui, luit-, atone.	
frigeo, frixi, be cold.	colo, colui, cult-, till.	mando, di, mans-, chew.	
fulgeo, fulsi, shine.	compesco, cui, restrain.	mergo, si, mers-, dip.	
hareo, si, hæs-, stick.	consulo, lui, it-, consult.	meto, messui, mess-, reap. [make water.	
indulgeo, si, s-, indulge.	coquo, coxi, coct-, cook.	mingo, minxi, miot-,	
jubeo, jussi, juss-, bid.	credo, didi, dit-, trust.	mitto, misi, miss-, send.	
languco, gui, faint.	oresco, evi, et-, grow.	molo, lui, lit-, grind.	
liqueo, liqui (cui), melt.	cudo, -di, -cus-, forge.	necto, xi (ui), nex-, weave.	
luceo, luxi, shine.	-cumbo, -cubui, -cu- -bit-, lie down.	nosco, novi, not-, learn.	
lugeo, xi, ct-, mourn.	cupio, ivi, it-, desire.	nubo, psi, pt-, marry.	
maneo, si, mans-, wait.	curro, cucurri, curs-, run.	-nuo, nui, nuit-, nod.	
misceo, soui, st-, (xt-) mix, mingle.	-outio, -ssi, -ss-, shake.	occulo, lui, it-, hide.	
mordeo, momordi, mors-, bite.	demo, mpsi, mpt-, take away.	pando, di, pans-, pass-, open.	
moveo, vi, mot-, move.	deproso, sui, st-, knead.	pango, nxi, net-, pegi	
mulceo, lsi, ls-, soothe.	disco, didici, discitu- -rus, learn.	pepiagi, pact-, fasten.	
mulgeo, lsi (xi), ls- (ict-), milk.	divido, visi, vis-, divide.	parco, peperci, parsi;	
neo, nevi, net-, spin.	-do, -didi, -dit-, give.	parcit-pars-, spare.	
niveo, tnixi, wink.	edo, edi, es-, eat (p. 42).	pario, peperci, parit-, part-, bring forth.	
paveo, pavi, fear.	emo, emi, empt-, buy.	pasco, pavi, past-, feed.	
pendeo, pependi, hang- -pleo, plevi, plet-, fill.	facesso, si, sit-, execute.	pecto, pexi, pex (pec- tit-), comb.	
prandeo, ndi, ns-, dine.	facio, feci, fact-, make.	pello, pepuli, puls-, drive.	
rideo, risi, ris-, laugh.	fallo, fefelli, fals-, fail.	pendo, pependi, pens-, weigh.	
sedeo, sedi, sess-, sit.	-fendo, -di, -ns-, ward.	pergo, perrexi, ct-, go on.	
sorbeo, bui (psi), suck.	fero, tūli, lat-, bear.	peto, petivi, petit-, seek.	
spondeo, spondendi, spons-, pledge.			

Table 14.

IRREGULAR CONJUGATION.—II.

pingo, nxi, pict-, paint.	sido, sidi (-sedi), sess-, settle.	tundo, tutūdi, tuna-, (tus-), beat.
pinso, nsi, ns-, st-, bray, bruise. [plaud.	sino, sivi, sīt-, permit.	uro, ussi, ust-, burn.
plaudo, si, plaus-, ap-	sisto, stīti, stāt-, stop.	vado, -vasi, -vas-, go.
plecto, xi, xui, x-, twine.	solvo, lvi, lūtum, pay.	veho, xi, ct-, carry.
pluo, piui, pluvi, rain.	spargo, rsi, rs-, spread.	vello, velli (vulsi), vuls-, pluck.
pono, posui, posit-, put.	sperno, sprevi, spret-, despise.	vendo, didi, dit-, sell.
posco, poposci, demand.	-spicio, spexi, spect-, look. [stretu	verro, ri, vers-, sweep.
prehendo, di, ns-, seize.	sterno, stravi, strat-, sterto, tui, snor-.	verto, ti, vers-, turn.
premo, pressi, ss-, press.	strepo, ui, it-, sound.	vinco, vici, vict-, conquer.
promo, mpsi, mpt-, bring out. [prick.	-stinguo, nxi, nct-, extinguish.	viso, visi, vis-, visit.
pungo, pupugi, punct-, quæro, sivi, sit-, seek.	stringo, nxi, ct-, bind.	vivo, vixi, vict-, live.
quatio, -cussi, quass-, shake.	struo, struxi, ct-, build.	volvo, lvi, volūt-, roll.
quiesco, evi, et-, rest.	suesco, evi, et-, bewont.	vomo, vomui, vomit-, vomit.
rado, rasi, ras-, scrape.	surgo, surrexi, ct-, rise.	IV. [comit.
rapio, pui, pt-, snatch.	tango, tetigi, tact-, touch. [despise.	amicio, xi (cui), clothe.
rodo, rosi, ros-, gnaw.	temno, -mpsi, -mpt-, tendo, tetendi, -tendi, tens-, stretch.	aperio, ui, rt-, open.
rudo, rudivi, it-, bray.	tergo, tersi, ters-, wipe.	farcio, rs, rt-, rct-, stuff.
rumpo, rupi, pt-, burst.	tero, trivi, trīt-, rub.	fulcio, lsi, it-, prop.
ruo, rui, rut-, it-, fall.	texo, texui, text-, weave. [raise.	haurio, si, st-, draw.
sapio, ivi, ui, be wise.	tollo, sustuli, sublat-, traho, xi, tract-, draw.	operio, ui, rt-, cover.
scabo, scabi, scratch.	tremo, mui, tremble.	raucio, si, s-, be hoarse.
scando, di, ns-, climb.	trudo, si, trus-, thrust.	reperio, ri, rt-, find.
scindo, idi, sciss-, tear.		salio, ui, il, salt-, leap.
scisco, ivi, it-, ordain.		sancio, nxi, ct-, ratify.
scribo, psi, pt-, write.		sancio, sars, sart-, patch.
sero, sevi, sāt-, sow.		sentio, nsi, ns-, feel.
sero, -serui, sert-, entwine.		sepelio, ivi, puit-, bury.
		sepio, psi, pt-, hedge in.
		venio, veni, nt-, come.
		vincio, nxi, nct-, bind.

DEPONENT VERBS.

IND.	I. Attempt.	SUBJ.	II. Fear.	III. Fall.	IV. Move a mass.	
PRES.	conor	-er	vereor	-ear	molior	-iar
IMP.	conabar	-arer	verebar	-erer	moliebar	-irer
FUT.	conabor		verebor		moliar	
PERF.	conatus sum		veritus sum		molitus sum	
PLUF.	conatus eram		veritus eram		molitus eram	
FUT. P.	conatus ero		veritus ero		molitus ero	
IMP.	conare, -ator		verere, -etor		molire, -itor	
INF.	conari		vereri		moliri	
PART.	conans		verens		moliens	
	conatus		veritus		molitus	
	conaturus		veriturus		moliturus	
	conandus		verendus		molendus	
GER.	conandum		verendum		molendum	
SUP.	conatum, -tu		veritum, -tu		molitum, -tu	

The following list contains all the Irregular Deponents:

II.	labor, laps-, fall.	paciscor, pact-, bargain.
fateor, fass, acknowledge.	loquor, locut-, speak.	pator, pass-, suffer.
reor, rāt-, reckon.	-miniscor, ment-, think.	proficiscor, fect-, set out.
tueor, tuit, tut-, defend.	moriōr, mortuus, moriturus, die.	queror, quest-, complain.
III.	nanciscor, nact-, nact, obtain.	sequor, secut-, follow.
adipiscor, ept-, obtain.	nascor, nat-, be born.	ulciscor, ult-, avenge.
amplect, plex-, embrace.		utor, us-, use.
experiscor, rect-, rouse.		IV.
fruo, fruct-, uit-, enjoy.	nitor, nix-, nis-, lean on.	experior, expert-, try.
fungor, funct-, perform.	obliscor, oblit-, forget.	metior, mens-, measure.
gradior, gress-, step.	orior, ortus-, oriturus, opperor, oppert-, wait.	
irascor, irat-, grow angry.	oriri, oreris, arise.	ordior, ors-, begin.

35. DEPONENT VERBS.

I. Deponent Verbs have the form of the Passive Voice, with an Active or Reflective signification (§ 90, II.) : as,

1. mīror	mirāri	mirātus	admire.
2. mēreor	merēri	merītus	deserve.
3. sēquor	sequi	secūtus	follow.
4. pōtior	potīri	potītus	obtain.

1. These verbs have the Participles, Gerunds, and Supines of both voices ; as, *mirans*, *admiring* ; *miraturus*, *about to admire* ; *miratus*, *having admired* ; *mirandus*, *to be admired* (admirable).

2. The participle in *ūs* (gerundive) has necessarily a passive meaning, and hence is found only in transitive verbs, or of neuter verbs used impersonally (§ 39, 5) : as,

potienda est tellus, *the land must be won*.

pugnandum est nobis, *we must fight*.

oblītus meorum, obliviscendus et illis, *forgetting my friends, and sure to be forgotten by them*.—Hor. Ep. I. 11, 9.

3. Most deponents are neuter or reflective in their meaning, corresponding to what in Greek verbs is called the Middle Voice.

4. More than half of all deponents are of the First Conjugation ; and all of these are regular.

5. About twenty verbs of active signification are found in both active and passive forms : as, *mēreo* or *mēreor*, *deserve*.

6. Some deponents are occasionally used in a passive signification : as, *crīmīnor*, *accuse* ; *dignor*, *deem worthy* ; *testor*, *testify*.

7. The perfect participle of verbs otherwise deponent is often passive : as, *mercātus*, *bought* ; *ādeptus*, *obtained*.

II. The verbs *audeo*, *dare* ; *fido*, *trust* ; *gaudeo*, *rejoice* ; *sōleo*, *be wont*, have no second or Perfect stem, but form the Perfect, etc., after the analogy of the passive : as, *ausus est*, *he dared* ; *fleus sum*, *I trusted* ; *gāvisus est*, *he was glad* ; *sōlīti sumus*, *we were accustomed*. These are called Semi-Deponents (sometimes Neuter Passives).

1. From *audeo* we have an old subjunctive *ausim*. The form *sōdes*, *an thou wilt* (for *si audes*), is frequent in the dramatists.

2. The active forms *vāpŭlo*, *be flogged*, and *vēneo*, *be sold* (*vēnum eo*, *go for sale*), have a passive meaning. They are sometimes called Neutral Passives.

36. DERIVATIVE VERBS.

I. INCHOATIVE or INCEPTIVE VERBS are formed by adding the termination **scō** to the stem and connecting vowel of their primitives: as, from **cāleo**, *I am warm*, **calesco**, *I grow warm*. They are of the Third Conjugation, and are found only in the tenses of the First or Present Stem.

II. INTENSIVES are formed by adding the terminations of the first conjugation to the third stem of certain verbs: as, **dicto**, *dictate*, from **dīco** (*dictum*), *say*.

III. FREQUENTATIVES are formed by adding **Itō** to the first stem of verbs of the first conjugation, **Itō** or **o** to the third stem of those of the third, and inflecting as in the first: as, **clāmItō**, *I keep shouting*; **dictItat**, *he keeps saying*.

IV. DESIDERATIVES, expressing a wish, end in **ūrio**, and are of the fourth conjugation: as, **ēsūrio** (from **ēdo**, *eat*), *I am hungry*.

37. IRREGULAR VERBS.

[For **esse** and its derivatives see § 29.]

I. **Vōlo**, **velle**, **volui**, *wish* (no third stem).

IND. PR. **vōlo** **vīs** **vult** **vōlūmus** **vultis** **vōlunt**.

SUBJ. PR. **vēlim**. IMPERF. **vellem**.

Other tenses are regular. There is no Imperative. The form **sis** for **si vīs**, *if you please*, is often found after imperatives: as, **cāve sis mentiaris**, *take care you don't lie*. Cic. Mil. 22.

II. **Nōlo** (*non volo*), **nolle**, **nolui**, *to be unwilling*.

IND. PR. **nōlo** **nonvīs** **nonvult** **nōlūmus** **nonvultis** **nōlunt**.

SUBJ. PR. **nōlim**. IMPERF. **nolem**.

IMPERATIVE. **nōlī** **nolīto** **nolīte** **nolitōte** **nolunto**.

The rest regular. No third stem.

III. **Mālo** (*māgis volo*), **malle**, **malui**, *prefer*.

IND. PR. **mālo** **māvīs** **māvult** **mālūmus** **māvultis** **mālunt**.

SUBJ. PR. **mālim**. IMPERF. **mallem**.

The rest regular; no Imperative or third stem.

Table 15.

IRREGULAR VERBS. — I.

VOLO, <i>will</i> .		NOLO, <i>will not</i> .		MALO, <i>prefer</i> .	
INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.
PRESENT.					
volo	velim	nolo	nolim	malo	malim
vis	velis	nonvis	nolis	mavis	malis
vult	velit	nonvult	nolit	mayult	malit
volūmus	velimus	noīumus	noli'mus	maīumus	malī'mus
vultis	velitis	nonvultis	nolitis	mayultis	malitis
volunt	velint	nolunt	nolint	malunt	malint
IMPERFECT.					
volebam	vellem	nolebam	nollem	malebam	mallem
volebas	velles	nolebas	nolles	malebas	malles
volebat	vellet	nolebat	nollet	malebat	mallet
volebamus	vellemus	nolebamus	nollemus	malebamus	mallemus
volebatis	velletis	nolebatis	nolletis	malebatis	malletis
volebant	vellent	nolebant	nolent	malebant	mallent
FUTURE.					
volam		nolam †		malam †	
voles		noles		males	
volet		nolet		malet	
volemus		nolemus		malemus	
voletis		noletis		maletis	
volent		nolent		malent	
PERFECT.					
volui	-erim	nolui	-erim	malui	-erim
voluisti	-eris	noluisti	-eris	maluisti	-eris
voluit	-erit	noluit	-erit	maluit	-erit
voluimus	-erimus	noluimus	-erimus	maluimus	-erimus
voluistis	-eritis	noluistis	-eritis	maluistis	-eritis
voluerunt	-erint	noluerunt	-erint	maluerunt	-erint
PLUPERFECT.					
volueram	-issem	nolueram	-issem	malueram	-issem
volueras	-isses	nolueras	-isses	malueras	-isses
voluerat	-isset	noluerat	-isset	maluerat	-isset
volueramus	-issemus	nolueramus	-issemus	malueramus	-issemus
volueratis	-issetis	nolueratis	-issetis	malueratis	-issetis
voluerant	-issent	noluerant	-issent	maluerant	-issent
FUTURE PERFECT.					
voluero	(-erim)	noluero	(-erim)	maluero	(-erim)
volueris		nolueris		malueris	
voluerit		noluerit		maluerit	
voluerimus		noluerimus		maluerimus	
volueritis		nolueritis		malueritis	
voluerint		noluerint		maluerint	
IMPERATIVE.					
PR.	noli,	noli'te, <i>do not</i> .			
FUT.	noli'to,	nolito'te, <i>thou shalt not, ye shall not</i> .			
	noli'to,	nolunto, <i>he shall not, they shall not</i> .			
INFINITIVE.					
PRES.	velle,	nolle		malle	
PERF.	voluisse,	noluisse		maluisse	
PARTICIPLE.					
PRESENT,	volens, <i>willing</i> .	nolens, <i>unwilling</i> .			
GERUND,	volendi, volendo	nolendi			
		† Rare			

Table 16.

IRREGULAR VERBS. — II.

ACTIVE.		FERO, bear.	PASSIVE.	
INDIC.	SUBJ.		INDIC.	SUBJ.
PRES. fero fers fert fer'imus fertis ferunt	feram feras ferat fer'imus feratis ferant		feror fertis fertur fer'imur ferimini feruntur	ferar feraris (re) feratur feramur feramini ferantur
IMP. ferebam	ferrem		ferabar	ferer
FUT. feram	laturus sim		ferar	
PERF. tuli	tulerim		latus sum	latus sim
PLUF. tuleram	tulissem		latus eram	latus essem
F. PERF. tulero	(tulerim)		latus ero	
		IMPERATIVE.		
			Sing.	Plur.
PRES. fer	fer	fer	ferre	ferimini
FUT. fert	fer	fer	feror	feruntur
		INFINITIVE.	PRES.	PERF.
PRES. ferre	tulisse	ferri	latus esse	
PRES. ferens	laturus	latus	ferendus	

EO, go.		FIO, become.	
INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.
PRES. eo, is, it imus, itis, eunt.	eam, eas, eat, &c.	fio, fis, fit imus, fitis, fiunt.	fiam, fias, &c.
IMP. ibam, ibas, &c.		fi'bam, &c.	fi'erem, &c.
FUT. ibo, ibis, &c.	iturus sim	fiam, es, et, &c.	
PERF. ivi (ii)	i'verim (ierim)	factus sum	factus sim
PLUP. i'veram	ivis'sem (iissem)	factus eram	factus essem
F. PER. i'vero	(iverim)	factus ero	(factus sim)
Sing. Plur.		Sing. Plur.	
PRES. i	ite	fi	fi
FUT. ito	itote, eunto	fito	fitote, fiunto
PRES. PERF. INFINITIVE.		PRES.	PERF.
ire	ivisse	feri	factus esse
PRES. FUT. PARTICIPILES.		PERF.	GER.
iens, euntis	iturus	factus	faciendus

QUEO, can.		NEQUEO, cannot.	
INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.
PRES. queo, quis, quit quimus, -itis, -eunt	queam	ne'queo, nonquis, -imus, -itis, -eunt	ne'queam, &c.
IMP. quibam, quibat quibant -ret, -rent	quirem, -ret, -rent	nequi'bam, -ibat -ibant	nequi'rem
FUT. quibo, quibunt		nequibunt	
PERF. quivi, -vit, -erunt	qui'verit	nequi'vi, -isti, -it	nequi'verim
PLUF. quivisse	quissent	nequisset	
INFIN. quire, quivisse		nequire, -ivisse	
PRES. quiens, queuntis		nequiens	

IV. **Fēro, ferre, tūli, lātum, bear.**

ACTIVE: IND. PRES. **fēro fers fert ferimus fertis fērunt.**
 SUBJ. IMP. **ferrem.** IMPERAT. **fer ferto ferte fertōte ferunto.**

PASSIVE: IND. PRES. **feror ferris fertur ferimur, &c.**
 SUBJ. IMP. **ferrer.** IMPERAT. **ferre fertor ferimini feruntor.**
 INFINITIVE. **ferri, latus esse.**
 PARTICIPLES. **ferens laturus latus ferendus.**

The rest regular.

V. **Ēdo, eat,** is a regular verb of the third conjugation, with the following forms like those of **esse**:—

IND. PRES. **ēs est estis.** SUBJ. (PRES. **edim**). IMPERF. **essem.**
 IMPERAT. **ēs esto estē estote.** INFIN. **esse.**

VI. **Eo, ire, ivi, itum, go.**

IND. PRES. **eo is it imus itis eunt.**
 IMPERF. **ibam.** FUT. **ibo ibis ibit ibimus ibitis ibunt.**
 SUBJ. PR. **eam.** IMPERF. **irem.**
 IMPERAT. **i ito ite itōte eunto.**
 PART. PRES. **iens, euntis.** FUT. **itūrus.** GER. **eundum.**

VII. **Fācio, facere, fēci, factum, make,** is inflected regularly in the Active; having also the peculiar forms **fāxo** (fut. perf.) and **fāxim** (subj. perf.). It has no Passive tenses formed upon the present stem, but uses instead **fio**, *be made*, or *become*, which is inflected as a regular verb of the Fourth Conjugation, but has the infinitive **fiēri** and the subjunctive imperfect **fiērem**: thus, — **fio fiēri factus sum.**

Compounds of **facio** with prepositions, change **ā** into **i** in the first stem, and into **e** in the third, and form their passive regularly: as,

conficō conficere confēci confectum, finish.

Other compounds retain the **a**, and have **fio** in the Passive: as,
 ACT. **bēnē-facio, (-fā'cis), -fēci, -factum.** PASS. **bēnē-fio, benefit.**

VIII. **Queo, I can,** and **nequeo, I cannot,** are conjugated like **eo**. They are rarely used except in the present: as,
queo quis quīt, quīre, quīvi.

38. DEFECTIVE VERBS.

I. **Coepi**, *began*; **ōdi**, *hate*; and **mēmīni**, *remember*, have no first stem. **Incīpio**, *begin*, is used as a present for **coepe**; **odi** and **memini** have a perfect stem only, with a present signification, and are hence called Preteritive Verbs. They are inflected regularly in the tenses derived from the second stem. Other parts of these verbs are —

1. **Coeptus** (used with the Passive Infinitive: as, **urbs coepta est obsīdēri**, *the city began to be beset*); **coepturus**, *about to begin*.

2. **Osus osurus**, both Active in their signification.

3. IMPERATIVE. **memento mementōte**, *remember*.

II. **Aio**, *say*, has the forms —

ais ait aiunt, aiebam, &c.; aias aiat aiant, aiena.

III. **Inquam**, *quoth I* (used in quotations: as, **inquit, quoth he**), has the following forms: —

PR. IND. **inquam inquis inquit inquīmus inquītis inquit.**

IMPERF. **inquebas.** PERF. **inquisti inquit.**

FUT. **inques inquiet.** IMPERAT. **inque inquito.**

IV. **Fāri**, *speak*, forms the periphrastic tenses regularly: as, **fātus sum, &c.** It has also —

IND. PR. **fātur.** FUT. **fābor, fabitur.**

IMPERAT. **fāre.** INFIN. **fāri.** SUPINE. **fātu.**

Certain other forms occur in Compounds.

V. The following are found chiefly in the Imperative: —

1. **salvē, salvēte**, *hail.* (**salveo.**)

2. **āvē, āvētē, āvēto**, *hail, or farewell.* (**aveo.**)

3. **cēdo, cette**, *give, tell.* 4. **āpāge**, *begone!*

39. IMPERSONAL VERBS.

These are found only in the third person singular, without any personal subject, this being often supplied by an infinitive or other grammatical construction. The most usual verbs of this class are such as the following: —

1. **Lībet** (**lībēt**), *it pleases*; **licet**, *it is permitted*, with infin. and dat.; **dēcet**, *fit*, **oportet**, *must*, with acc. (§ 70, III.): as, **libet mihi lēgere**, *licet tibi lūdēre*, *I like to read, you may play*. **oportuit me ire**, *I had to go*.

2. **Misērēt**, *it grieves*, **pūdet**, *it shames*, **taedet**, *it wearies*, **pīget**, *it disgusts*, with acc. of person and gen. of object: as, **miseret me cāsus tui**, *I am sorry for your mishap*. (§ 50, IV. 3.)

3. **Accīdit**, *it happens*; **restat**, *it remains*; having a phrase or clause as subject: as,

persaepe evēnit ut ūtilitas cum hōnestāte certet, *it often happens that gain is at variance with honor*. (§ 70, II.)

4. **Pluit**, *it rains*; **ningit**, *it snows*; **grandīnat**, *it hails*.

5. The passive of Neuter Verbs, or those governing the Dative: as, **pugnātur**, *there is fighting*; **parcītur mihi**, *I am spared*.

40. PERIPHRASTIC FORMS.

I. The participle in **rus** may be used with any mood or tense of **sum**, forming the Periphrastic Future Active: as, **cum venturus sit**, *since he is about to come*.

II. The participle in **dus** (Gerundive) may be used in the same way to denote duty or propriety: as, **vēra dicenda sunt**, *the truth must be told*.

So with the nominative of the Gerund: as, **agītandumst vigilias**, *I must keep watch*. — Plaut. Trin. 869.

NOTE. — The auxiliary verb (or copula) **esse** is often omitted in these periphrastic forms (see § 34).

41. ADVERBS.

I. Adverbs are regularly formed from adjectives of the first and second declensions by adding **ē** to the stem; from those of the third by adding **ter** or **īter**: as, **cārus**, *dear*, **carē**; **sāpiens**, *wise*, **sapienter**; **brēvis**, *short*, **brevisiter**; **audax**, *bold*, **audāciter**, or **audacter**.

The Comparative of an adverb thus formed is the neuter of the corresponding adjective; the superlative changes **us** of the adjective into **ē**: as,

cārē, carius, carissimē, *dearly*.

nūper, nuperrime, *lately, just now*.

sāpienter, sapientius, sapientissime, *wisely*.

breviter, brevius, brevissime, *shortly*.

faciliter (or facilē), facilius, facillime, *easily*.

bēnē (for bōnē), mēlius, optimē, *well, better, best*.

mālē, pējus, pessimē, *ill, worse, worst*.

So compare the adverbs —

diu, diutius, diutissime, *long (in time)*.

saepe, saepius, saepissime, *often*.

sātis, *enough*; satius, *preferable*.

sēcus, sēcius, *otherwise*.

II. The following adverbs require special explanation : —

1. **Etiam**, *also*, is stronger than **quōque**, and precedes the emphatic word, while **quōque** follows it: *as*,

terret etiam nos, ac mīnātur, *us also he terrifies and threatens*.

— Cic. Ros. Am. 40.

hoc quōque malefīcium, *this crime likewise*. — Id.

2. **Nunc**, *now*, points definitely to the present time; **jam**, *already*, has a reference to the past, and with negatives means *no longer*. A similar relation exists between **tunc** and **tum**: *as*,

nunc jam aperte rempublicam pētis, *now at last you openly attack the commonwealth*. — Cic. Cat. I. 5.

non est jam lēnītati lōcus, *there is no longer room for lenity*.

— Id. II. 4.

nunc quīdem delēta est, tunc flōrēbat, *now to be sure it [Greece] is destroyed, then it prospered*. — Id. Ros. Am. 4.

tum, cum ex urbe Cātīlinam eiciēbam, *at the time when I was engaged in expelling Catiline from the city*. — Id. Cat. III. 2.

3. **Certō** means *certainly*; **certē** usually *at any rate*: *as*,

certo scio, *I know for a certainty*. — Cic. de Senect. 1.

ōnēre aut jam urgentis aut certe adventantis sēnectūtis et te et me ipsum lēvāri vōlo, *I wish both you and myself to be relieved of the weight of old age, which is either already pressing upon us, or at any rate approaching*. — Id.

4. **Primum**, *first*, is usually followed by **deinde**, *next*, &c.; **primo**, *at first*, by **postea** or **mox**, *afterwards*: as,

primum mihi videtur de genere belli, deinde de magnitudine, tum de imperatore deligendo esse dicendum,
I think I must speak first of the nature of the war, next of its magnitude, then of the choice of a commander. — Cic. de Leg. Man. 2.

dissuadente primo Vercingetorige, post concedente, Vercingetorige at first opposing, afterwards yielding. — Cæs. B.G. VII. 15.

5. With **ne** ... **quidem**, *not even*, the emphatic word stands between **ne** and **quidem**: as,

ne omnis quidem causâ, *not even for the sake of the omen.* — Cic. Ros. Am. 48.

6. Two negatives make an affirmative, as in English.

42. PREPOSITIONS.

I. The following Prepositions are followed by the accusative: —

ad , to.	ergâ , towards.	post , after.
adversus , or	extrâ , outside.	praeter , beyond.
adversum , towards.	infra , below.	propè , near.
antè , before.	inter , among.	propter , on account of.
apud , at, near.	intrâ , inside.	secundum , next to.
circâ , or	juxtâ , near.	suprà , above.
circum , around.	ob , on account of.	trans , across.
circiter , about.	pénès , in the power.	ultrâ , on the further side.
cis , citrâ , this side.	për , through.	
contrâ , against.	pönè , behind.	

II. The following take the ablative: —

â , âb , abs , from, by.	ë , ex , out of.
absquë , but for, without.	prae , in comparison with.
cõram , in presence of.	prõ , in front of, for.
cum , with.	sínè , without.
dë , down from.	tõnüs , up to, or as far as.

III. The following take the accusative or ablative: —

in, into, in; **süb**, under; **subtër**, beneath; **süpër**, above. (§ 56, I.)

In and **sub**, when followed by the accusative, signify *motion to*, when by the ablative, *rest in*, a place: as,

in Itāliam vēnit, atque in Etruriā tres annos mānēbat, *he came to Italy, and staid in Tuscany three years.*

sub montem ivit, ibique sub arbore consēdit, *he went to the foot of a hill, and sat down there under a tree.*

IV. The following require special explanation:—

In, with the accusative, means *into*; **ad**, *to* (the neighborhood), is used especially for persons; **ex** (e), *out of*, is the reverse of **in**; **ab** (a), *away from*, is the reverse of **ad**; **de**, *from*, has reference to a part of the object: as,

lēgāti in castrā vēniunt, *the ambassadors come into the camp.*—

Cic. Ros. Am. 9.

ut prōficiāntur ad L. Sullam, *that they may go to Lucius Sulla.*—Id.

e patrīmōniō nudum expūlisti, *you cast him naked out of his inheritance.*—Id. 50.

ab sē injūriam prōpulsārē, *to ward off injury from himself.*—Id.

nihil de patris fortūnis ad suam rem convertit, *he has turned nothing to his own use from his father's fortunes.*—Id. 49.

43. CONJUNCTIONS.

Conjunctions are more numerous, and their use is much more accurately distinguished, in Latin than in English. The following list includes those most important:—

1. **Et**, *and*, connects independent words or clauses; **-que** (enclitic), combines closely into one connected idea; **atque** (sometimes **ac** before consonants), adds with emphasis: as,

frēmit mīles, et tribūnos centūriōnesque prōditiōnis arguit, *the soldiers rave, and accuse the tribunes and centurions of treachery.*—Tac. Hist. I. 80.

mānere ac dēprehendi, an fūgere et dispergi periculōsius foret, *whether it were more dangerous to remain and be seized, or to fly and scatter.*—Id. 81.

When the second member is negative, **neque** (**nec**) is used: as,
rēdiērunt in castra inviti nēque innocētes, *they return into the camp unwilling and not innocent.*—Id. 82.

1. The first part of the document is a list of names and addresses, which appears to be a directory or a list of contacts. The names are written in a cursive script, and the addresses are listed below them.

2. The second part of the document is a list of names and addresses, which appears to be a directory or a list of contacts. The names are written in a cursive script, and the addresses are listed below them.

3. The third part of the document is a list of names and addresses, which appears to be a directory or a list of contacts. The names are written in a cursive script, and the addresses are listed below them.

4. The fourth part of the document is a list of names and addresses, which appears to be a directory or a list of contacts. The names are written in a cursive script, and the addresses are listed below them.

5. The fifth part of the document is a list of names and addresses, which appears to be a directory or a list of contacts. The names are written in a cursive script, and the addresses are listed below them.

6. The sixth part of the document is a list of names and addresses, which appears to be a directory or a list of contacts. The names are written in a cursive script, and the addresses are listed below them.

7. The seventh part of the document is a list of names and addresses, which appears to be a directory or a list of contacts. The names are written in a cursive script, and the addresses are listed below them.

8. The eighth part of the document is a list of names and addresses, which appears to be a directory or a list of contacts. The names are written in a cursive script, and the addresses are listed below them.

9. The ninth part of the document is a list of names and addresses, which appears to be a directory or a list of contacts. The names are written in a cursive script, and the addresses are listed below them.

10. The tenth part of the document is a list of names and addresses, which appears to be a directory or a list of contacts. The names are written in a cursive script, and the addresses are listed below them.

[illegible]

1. The first step in the process is to identify the problem or issue that needs to be addressed. This involves gathering information and understanding the context of the problem.

2. Once the problem is identified, the next step is to define the objectives and goals of the project. This helps to clarify what needs to be achieved and provides a clear direction for the team.

3. The third step is to develop a plan or strategy to address the problem. This involves breaking down the problem into smaller, manageable tasks and determining the resources needed to complete each task.

4. The fourth step is to implement the plan. This involves putting the strategy into action and monitoring progress to ensure that the project is on track.

5. The final step is to evaluate the results of the project. This involves assessing the outcomes against the objectives and goals and identifying any areas for improvement.

5. **Ergo**, *therefore*, is used for things demonstrated ; **Itaque**, in proofs from the nature of things ; **Igitur**, *then* (a weak *ergo*), in passing from one stage of the argument to another ; **idcirco**, *for this reason*, to call attention to a special argument : as,

ergo idcirco turpis haec culpa est, quod duas res sanctissimas violat, *therefore, for this reason, this is a base misdeed, because it violates two most holy things*. — Cic. Rosc. Am. 39.

nec se comitem illius furoris sed ducem praeiuit. **Itaque** hac amentia quaestione nova perterritus in Asiam profugit. **Nulla est igitur excusatio peccati, si amici causam peccaveris**, *nor did he offer himself as an associate of this mad enterprise, but a leader. Therefore he fled to Asia, scared by a fresh accusation on account of this madness. It is then no excuse for a wrong, that you have done it for a friend*. — Id. de Amic. 11.

6. **Quia**, *because*, regularly introduces a fact ; **quod**, an allegation ; **quoniam**, *since*, has reference to motives : as,

illos quamquam sunt hostes, tamen, quia sunt cives, monitos volo, *although they are enemies, still, because they are citizens, I wish them to be admonished*. — Cic. Cat. II. 12.

quoniam nondum est perscriptum senatus consultum, ex memoria vobis quid senatus censuerit, exponam. **Primum mihi gratiae aguntur, quod virtute, consilio, providentia mea res publica maximis periculis sit liberata**, *since the decree of the Senate has not yet been written out, I will recite to you from memory what the Senate voted. In the first place, thanks are rendered to me on the ground that, by my courage, judgment, and foresight, the commonwealth has been freed from the greatest peril*. — Id. III. 6.

7. **Quum** (*cum*), *when*, is always a relative conjunction ; **quando** is also used interrogatively : as,

cum tacent, clamant, when they are silent, they cry out. — Cic. Cat. I. 8.

O rus, quando ego te aspiciam ? *O country, when shall I see thee ?* — Hor. Sat. II. 6, 60.

8. **Et...et** means *both . . . and*; **tum . . . tum** and (more commonly) **cum . . . tum** have the same meaning, but emphasize the second member: as,

et privātim et publicē, *both in private and in public*. — Cic. Verr. V. 1.

tum dēprēcabitur a vōbis, tum etiam pro suo jūre contendet, *he will not only entreat from you, but will claim as his right*. — Id.

9. **Atque (ac)** is used after words of similarity: as,
rātio ordoque agminis aliter se habēbat ac Belgae ad Nervios detulerant, *the arrangement and order of the army was otherwise than as the Belgians had reported to the Nervii*. — Cæs. B.G. II. 19.

10. **Autem, enim, vērō** always stand second or third in the clause; the same is generally true of **igitur**, and often of **tāmen**. — See 2, 4, 5.

11. The same fondness for connecting one sentence closely with the preceding which caused the use of relatives at the commencement of a sentence (§ 43, iv.), led to the employment of **namque, etēnim, neque, &c.**, in the same place: as,
namque me lūpus fugit inermem, *for a wolf fled from me, although unarmed*. — Hor. Carm. I. 22, 9.

44. FORMATION OF WORDS.

I. NOUNS DERIVED FROM NOUNS.

1. Those ending in **um** or **etum** signify a *collection* or *group*: as,

arboretum, *grove*; **arbustum**, *vineyard* (*arbor*).

2. Diminutives usually end in **ulus** or **ulus**, often with the feminine and neuter terminations: as,
filiulus, *little son* (*filius*); **arbuscula**, *shrub* (*arbor*); **curriculum**, *little car* (*currus*), or *race-course*.

3. Patronymics generally end in **ades** or **ides** (F. *as, is*): as,
Aeneades, *son of Aeneas* (plural, *companions*); **Peleides** (contr. **Pelides**) *son of Peleus*; **Tyndāris**, *daughter of Tyndarus*.

II. NOUNS DERIVED FROM ADJECTIVES.

Nouns derived from Adjectives have the termination **ia**, **itas**, or **tūdo**: as,

brēvitas, *shortness* (**brēvis**); **audācia**, *boldness* (**audax**); **magnitūdo**, *greatness* (**magnus**).

III. NOUNS DERIVED FROM VERBS.

1. Nouns formed by adding **or** (fem. **rix**) to the supine stem, denote the person who does the action: as,
victor, **victrix**, *conqueror* (**vinco**).

2. Those formed by adding **io** or **us** (fourth dec.) to the supine stem, express abstractly the idea of the verb: as,
mōtio or **mōtus**, *movement* (**mōveo**).

3. Those formed by adding **men** or **mentum** to the present stem, indicate the subject, object, or means of the action: as,
flūmen, *stream* or *river* (**fluo**); **dōcūmentum**, *proof* (**doceo**).

IV. ADJECTIVES DERIVED FROM NOUNS.

1. The ending **eus** or **āceus** denotes *material*: as,
aurēus, *golden* (**aurum**); **chartāceus**, *of paper* (**charta**).

2. The endings **icus** and **ilis** denote *belonging to*: as,
civīcus and **civīlis**, *belonging to a citizen* (**civis**).

3. The terminations **ōsus** and **lentus** indicate *fulness*: as,
cōpiōsus, *abundant* (**copia**); **opūlentus**, *wealthy* (**ōpes**).

4. Many in **tus** are formed like participles: as,
aurātus, *gilded* (**aurum**); **aurītus**, *long-eared* (**auris**); **cornūtus**, *horned* (**cornu**).

5. Adjectives from proper names end in **ānus**: as,
Pompēianus, *of Pompey*; **Rōmanus**, *Roman*.

6. From names of places are also adjectives in **ensis**, **icus**, and **as** (gen. **ātis**): as,
Cannensis, *of Cannæ*; **Pharsālīcus**, *of Pharsalus*; **Arpīnas**, *of Arpinum* (gen. pl. **-atium**).

V. ADJECTIVES DERIVED FROM VERBS.

1. Verbal adjectives in **bundus** (chiefly from verbs of the first conjugation) imply *condition* or *act*: as,
errābundus, apt to stray (*erro*); **moribundus**, at the point of death (*mōrior*); **vitābundus**, avoiding (with acc.).

2. Those in **idus** (chiefly from neuter verbs), denote *quality*: as,
cālidus, warm (*cāleo*); **callidus**, cunning (*calleo*); **lūcidus**, bright (*lūceo*).

3. Those in **ax**, denote a *propensity* or *active quality*: as,
audax, bold (*audeo*); **pugnax**, full of fight (*pugno*).

4. Those in **ilis** and **ilis**, denote *possibility* or *aptness*: as,
frāgilis, frail (*frango*); **amābilis**, lovely (*āmo*).

VI. COMPOUND NOUNS.

Examples of these are —

patriōida, one who kills his father (*pāter*, *caedo*).

tubīcen, trumpeter (*tūba*, *cāno*).

tibīcen, piper (*tibia*, *cāno*).

armīger, armor-bearer (*arma*, *gēro*).

signīfer, standard-bearer (*signum*, *fēro*).

pontīfex, priest, (bridge-maker, *pons*, *fācio*).

auceps, bird-catcher (*āvis*, *cāpio*).

There are numerous other derivative forms, but the above are those which occur most frequently.

Many words are sometimes classed as Derivatives, which are formed by simply adding the termination of the noun, adjective, or verb, to the same root or stem: as, from **rēg-** *rule*, are formed **rēg o**, I govern or direct; **rex** (gen. **rēgis**), king; **rēgīna**, queen; **rēgālis**, **rēgius**, royal; **regnum**, royalty; **rēgio**, district under a common rule, or lying in a given range.

PART SECOND.

USE OF WORDS. (SYNTAX.)

45. DEFINITIONS.

1. The Subject of a proposition is the person or thing spoken of ; the Predicate is that which is stated of the Subject.

2. A word is said to Agree with another, when it is in a corresponding grammatical form ; it is said to Govern another, when it requires it to be in a particular Case.

The word so governed is called the Object.

3. The verb *esse*, *to be*, when it connects an attribute with its subject, is called the Copula ; otherwise, it is called the Substantive Verb.

I. RULES OF AGREEMENT.

46. OF NOUNS.

A Noun used to describe another agrees with it in Case ; this is called Apposition : as,

externus timor, maximum concordiae vinculum, fear of the foreigner, the strongest bond of union. — Liv. II. 39.

quattuor hic, primum omen, equos vidi, I saw here four horses, the first omen. — Virg. *Æn.* III. 537.

Ancum Marcium regem populus creavit, the people made Ancus Marcius king. — Liv. I. 32.

consules creantur Caesar et Servilius, Caesar and Servilius are made consuls. — *Cæsar B.C.* III. 1. (*consules* in the predicate nominative, after the passive *creantur*.)

littēras Graecas sēnex didīci, *I learned Greek letters when an old man* (senex in appos. with ego understood).

Aristaeus qui olivae dīcitur inventor, *Aristæus, who is called the discoverer of the olive.* — Cic. N. D. III. 18.

1. Also in Gender when it can: as,

olivae Mīnerva inventrix, *Minerva the discoverer of the olive.* — Virg. G. I. 18.

2. A Noun in apposition with the locative case is put in the ablative with or without the preposition **in** (§ 55, III. 3): as,
Antiochiaē, cēlēbri quondam urbe et cōpiōsa, *at Antioch, once a famous and wealthy city.* — Cic. pro Arch. 3.

mīlites Albae constiterunt in urbe mūnita, *the soldiers halted at Alba, a fortified town.* — Id. Phil. IV. 2.

3. The genitive is used in apposition with possessive pronouns, taking the gender and number of the implied subject: as,

in nostro omnium flētū, *amid the tears of us all.* — Cic. pro Mil. 34.

47. OF ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives, also Adjective Pronouns and Participles, agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case: as,

consulāria mūnēra, *the consular duties*; **hac lēge**, *by this law*; **ūno interfecto**, *one being slain.*

I. With two or more nouns the adjective is plural: as,

Nisus et Euryālus primi, *Nisus and Euryalus first.* — Virg. Æn. V. 394.

II. With nouns of different genders it either (1) agrees with the nearest: as,

si res, si vir, si tempus ullum dignum fuit, *if any thing, if any man, if any time, was fit.* — Cic. pro Mil. 7.

Or (2) it may be masculine, if they are living beings, neuter if things without life: as,

lābor (M.) **vōluptasque** (F.) **sociētate quādam inter se nātūrālī sunt juncta** (N.), *labor and pleasure are joined to one another by a certain natural alliance.* — Liv. V. 4.

uxor deinde ac libēri amplexi, *then his wife and children embraced him.* — Id. II. 40.

An adjective (masc. or fem.) may refer to a noun of different gender, when the existence of persons is implied: as,

cōlōniæ aliquot dēductæ, Prisci Latīni appellāti, *colonies were established [of men] called Prisci Latini.* — Liv. I. 3.
pars certare pāratī, *a part ready to contend.* — Virg. Æn. V. 108.

magna pars raptæ, *most of the women were seized.* — Liv. I. 9.

This is called Synesis, or **constructio ad sensum**.

III. Adjectives are often used as nouns, meaning persons or things: as,

dīdīcit jam dīves āvārus laudāre dīsertos, *the rich miser has already learned to compliment the eloquent.* — Juv. VII. 30.

So, constantly, are the possessive pronouns, in military or other special use: as,

suos contīnebat, *he held his men in check.* — Cæs. B.G. I. 15.

So a noun is sometimes used as an adjective or qualified by an adverb: as,

admōdum puer, *quite a boy*; **māgis vīr**, *more of a man*; **fautor ineptē**, *a stupid admirer.* — Hor. Sat. I. 10, 2.

IV. A neuter adjective is used as a noun (1) to denote the abstract quality, or (pl.) things in general; as,

tanta vis est hōnesti, ut spēciem ūtīlītatis obscūret, *so great is the force of honor, that it dims the show of gain.* — Cic. de Off. III. 11.

But where the meaning would be doubtful, the feminine is used with **res**. Hence adjectives of the third declension are thus used rarely except in the nom. and acc.: as,

lōquītur de omnibus rēbus (not **de omnibus**), *he talks about every thing*; but **omnia mihi dixit**, *he told me every thing*.

(2) In apposition with a noun of different gender: as,
vārium et mūtābile semper femīna, *woman, ever fickle and changeful.* — Virg. Æn. IV. 569.

(3) In apposition with an infinitive clause or phrase : as,
aliud est errāre Cæsārem nolle, aliud nolle misērēri, it is one thing to be unwilling that Cæsar should err, another to be unwilling that he should pity. — Cic. pro Lig. 5.

V. Adjectives (especially those formed from proper names), as well as the possessive pronouns, are often used instead of a genitive : as,

ācies Pompēiāna, Pompey's line of battle. — Cæs. B.C. III. 94.
video hērilem filium, I spy master's son. — Ter. Eun. II. 2.

The possessive is regularly used instead of the genitive of possession of the personal pronouns : as, *domus mea, my house.*

An adjective pronoun sometimes agrees in gender with a word in apposition, rather than with that to which it refers : as,
eam sapientiam interpretantur, quam adhuc mortālis nemo est consecūtus (for *id . . . quod*), *they explain that to be wisdom, which no man ever yet attained.* — Cic. de Amic. V.

VI. An adjective in Latin is sometimes best rendered by other forms in English : as,

te quam laetus inviso, how joyfully I visit thee. — Catull. 31, 4.
primus vēnit, he was the first to come.
eos se invito adesse dixit, he said they were there against his will.

VII. When two qualities of an object are compared, both adjectives are usually in the comparative : as,

longior quam lātior ācies erat, the line was longer than it was broad. — Liv. XXVII. 48.

VIII. Superlatives denoting order and succession, also *mēdius, midst, cētērus, other, rēliq̄uus, remaining*, are used to designate a part : as,

in colle mēdio, on the middle of the hill. — Cæs. B.G. I. 24.
summus mons, the top of the height. — Id. 22.

So, sērā nocte, late at night.

IX. *Alius . . . alius, one . . . another*, implies that the predicate is differently applied in each case : as,

duo rēges ālius ālia viā cīvitatem auxērunt, two kings enlarged the state, each in his own way. — Liv. I. 21.

48. OF RELATIVES.

Relatives serve (1) as nouns in the subordinate clause in which they stand; (2) as connectives, relating directly to some word in the main proposition, which is called the Antecedent.

The use of relatives is much more frequent in Latin than it is in English, owing to the fondness of the ancients for connecting a sentence very closely to the preceding. (See § 43, 11.)

I. Relatives agree with their antecedents in gender, number, and person, their case depending on the construction of the clause in which they stand: as,

utrum ille qui postulat ad tantum bellum legatum quem velit idoneus non est qui impetret? *is not he who claims for such a war the deputy whom he will, fit to get him?* — Cic. pro Lege Manil. 19.

adsum qui feci, *here am I who did it.* — Æn. IX. 427.

II. The relative often agrees in gender with the noun (appositive) in its own clause rather than with the antecedent: as,

mare etiam quem Neptunum esse dicebas, *the sea, too, which you said was Neptune.* — Cic. N. D. III. 20.

III. The antecedent is often repeated in the relative clause: as,

loci natura erat haec quem locum nostri castris delegerant, *the nature of the ground which our men had chosen for the camp was this.* — Cæs. B. G. II. 18.

Sometimes it is omitted: as,

qui arma capere potuerunt, restiterunt, *those who could take arms held their ground.* — Cæs. B. G. IV. 14.

qui cognoscere misit, *he sent men to reconnoitre.* — Id. I. 21.

Sometimes it stands only in the relative clause: as,

quas res in consulatione nostra gessimus attigit hic versibus, *he has touched in verse the things which we did in our consulship.* — Cic. Arch. 11.

In such cases, the demonstrative *is* or *hic* usually stands in the principal clause: as,

quae pars civitatis calamitatem populo Romano intulerat ea princeps poenas persolvit, that part of the state which had brought disaster on the Roman people was the first to pay the penalty. — Cæs. B.G. I. 12.

In a sentence of this class, the relative clause in Latin generally stands first; but in translating, the noun should be transferred, in its proper case, to the antecedent clause, as in the example just quoted.

IV. A relative often stands at the beginning of a clause or sentence where in English a demonstrative must be used: as, *quorum quod simile factum? what ever happened like this?* — Cic. Cat. IV. 8.

quod si facit — quam impudentiam est — eumne testem improbabit quem iudicem probavit? If he does this — and he is shameless enough for it — will he challenge one as witness whom he has approved as juror? — Cic. Ros. Com. 15.

V. *Id quod* or *quae res* is used instead of *quod* to relate to an idea or group of words previously expressed: as, *[obtrectatum est] Gabinio dicam, an Pompeio? an utrique — id quod est verius? [insult has been offered] shall I say to Gabinius, or Pompey? or to both, which is nearer the truth?* — Cic. de Leg. Manil. 19.

49. VERBS.

Verbs agree with their subject in person and number; in gender also in the periphrastic forms: as, *ego statuo, I resolve; oratio est habita, the plea was spoken.*

I. With two or more singular subjects the verb will be in the plural; and if they are of different persons, it will be in the first rather than the second, or the second than the third: as,

si tu et Tullia vales, ego et Cicero valemus, if you and Tullia are well, I and Cicero are well. — Cic. Fam. XIV. 5.

But the verb will be singular if the subjects are considered as one whole : as,

haec tua justitia et lenitas animi florescit quotidie magis,
this justice and gentleness of yours flowers daily more and
more. — Cic. pro Marc. 4.

So, too, if they are joined by disjunctives : as,

neque fides neque jusjurandum neque illum misericordia
repressit, not faith, nor oath, nor mercy, checked him. —
 Ter. Ad. III. 2, 8.

A collective noun may in poetry take a plural verb : as,
quaerunt pars aditum, a part seek the entrance. — Æn. IX. 507.

Also such singulars as *quisque, every ; uterque, each.*

II. The personal pronoun, as subject, is usually omitted, unless emphatic : as,

loquor = I speak ; ego loquor, = it is I that speak.

So an indefinite subject : as, *ferunt, they say.*

III. The infinitive is sometimes used instead of the personal form in narrative ; this is called the Historical Infinitive : as,

tum Catilina polliceri tabulas novas, then Catiline promised
an abolition of debts. — Sallust, Cat. 21.

ego instare, ut mihi responderet, I pressed him to answer me.
 — Cic. in Verr. II. 77.

II. RULES OF GOVERNMENT.

50. GENITIVE.

The Genitive, in its primary meaning, denotes Origin or Possession. It is used —

I. To define more precisely the meaning of a noun (SUBJECTIVE GENITIVE) : as,

potentia Pompei formidolosa erat, the power of Pompey was
alarming. — Sall. Cat. 19.

The limiting genitive frequently stands in the predicate : as,
alterum genus est eorum qui rerum potiri volunt, a second class
consists of the would-be masters of affairs. — Cic. Cat. II. 8.

1. A phrase or clause with **esse**, *to be*, is often limited by the genitive; most frequently the genitive of adjectives and abstract nouns: as,

neque sui iūdicii [esse] dēcernēre, *it was not for his judgment to decide.* — Cæs. B.C. I. 35.

tīmīdi est optare nēcem, *it belongs to a coward to desire death.* — Ov. Met. IV. 115. (Compare § 73, I.)

The genitive used in this way often takes the place of a neuter adjective: as, **sāpientis est** (not **sapiens est**), *it is wise.*

Instead of the genitive of personal pronouns, the neuter of the possessive is used: as,

mentīri non est meum, *it is not for me to lie.* — Ter. Heaut. II. 2.

2. The genitive of quality requires an adjective: as,

vīr summae hōnestatis, *a man of the highest honor.*

The ablative is also used in this way: as,

vīr summo consilio, *a man of the highest prudence.* (§ 54, II.)

3. The genitive is sometimes used instead of a noun in apposition; as,

nōmen insāniae, *the word insanity.* — Cic. Tusc. III. 4.

4. A genitive of specification, after adjectives, is common in the poets and late prose writers: as,

intēger vitae scōlērisque pūrus, *upright of life and clear of guilt.* — Hor. Od. I. 22, 1.

II. To denote the Whole, after words signifying a Part (PARTITIVE GENITIVE). These are —

1. Nouns or Pronouns: as,

pars milītum, *part of the soldiers*; **quis nostrum?** *which of us?*

2. Numerals, Comparatives, and Superlatives: as,

alter consūlum, *one of the (two) consuls.*

plurimum tōtius Galliae ēquitatu vālet, *is strongest in cavalry of all Gaul.* — Caes. B.G. V. 3.

3. Neuter Adjectives and Pronouns: as,

tantum spatii, *so much space*; **aliquid nummorum**, *a few pence*; **plāna urbis**, *the level parts of the town.*

4. Adverbs, especially of Place and Quantity: *as*,
sātis pēcūniae, *enough money*; **ubīnam gentium sumus?** *where
 in the world are we?* **inde loci**, *next in order*.

Instead of the Partitive Genitive, **ex** with the ablative is often
 used: *as*,

finus ex tribūnis, *one of the tribunes*.

III. To denote the object of some action implied by the
 governing word (OBJECTIVE GENITIVE). Words of this
 class are —

1. Nouns expressing action or mental emotion: *as*,

grātia bēnēficii, *gratitude for a favor*.

laudator temporis acti, *one who praises the past*. — Hor. de
 Arte Poetica. 173.

injuria mulierum Sabīnarum, *the wrong done the Sabine women*.

mēmōria nostri tua, *your memory of us*. — Cic. Fam. XII. 17.

vim suorum pro suo pēriculo dēfendebant, *they parried the
 attack on their comrades as if it were their own peril*. —

Cæs. B.C. III. 110.

So, rarely, with the possessive pronouns: *as*,

pēriculo invidiæ meæ, *with risk of odium against me*. — Cic.
 Cat. II. 2.

2. Adjectives of Fulness or Want, and those expressing feeling
 or desire, knowledge or ignorance: *as*,

sermonis plēnus orātor, *a speaker full of words*. — Cic. Brut. 68.

erat plēna licōrum et impēriōrum prōvincia, *the province
 was full of lictors and officials*. — Cæs. B.C. III. 32.

**Cethēgus qui dixisset se semper bōnorum ferrāmentorum
 studiōsum fuisse**, *Cethegus, who had said that he had al-
 ways been a fancier of good cutlery*. — Cic. Cat. III. 5.

3. Verbal Adjectives, especially with the terminations **ax** and
ns: *as*,

erat in oppīdo multītūdō insōlens belli, *there was in the town
 a population unused to war*. — Cæs. B.C. II. 36.

hābetis dūcem mēmōrem vestri oblītum sui, *you have a leader
 who thinks of you and forgets himself*. — Cic. Cat. IV. 9.

justum ac tēnācem prōpōsiti vīrum, *a man just and steadfast
 to his purpose*. — Hor. Od. III. 3, 1.

4. Several adjectives which also govern the dative; especially *similis*, *like*; *par*, *aequalis*, *equal*; *communis* *common to*; *as*, *proprium senectutis*, *peculiar to old age*. — Cic. Sen. 11.

The relation of the Objective Genitive may also be expressed by prepositions: *as*,

odium in Caesarem, *hatred of Caesar*, (or, *odium Caesaris*).

IV. As the object of the following classes of verbs:—

1. Of remembering, forgetting, and reminding, — when used generally, to denote the subject on which the mind is exercised: *as*,

obliviscere caedis atque incendiorum, *turn your mind from slaughter and conflagrations*. — Cic. Cat. I. 3.

But the accusative must be used with these verbs to express a particular thing remembered or forgotten: *as*,

hoc te admoneo, *I remind you of this*.

2. Of accusing, condemning, and acquitting, to express the charge, and sometimes the penalty: *as*,

C. Marium sceleris ac parricidii nefarii mortuum condemnabimus? *shall we convict Caius Marius, now dead, of crime and infamous treason?* — Cic. pro Rabir. 10.

C. Gracchum capitis damnaverunt, *they condemned Caius Gracchus to death*.

The crime may be expressed by the ablative with *de*; the punishment by the ablative alone: *as*,

de ambitu condemnatos, *convicted of bribery*. — Suet. Jul. 41.

vitia autem hominum atque fraudes damnis, ignominia, vinculis, verbis, exiliis, morte, damnantur, *while the vices and crimes of men are punished with fines, dishonor, chains, scourgings, exile, death*. — Cic. de Or. I. 43.

3. *Misereor*, *miseresco*, *pity*: also, the Impersonals *misereor*, *pity*; *piget*, *disgust*; *poenitet*, *repent*; *pudet*, *shame*; *taedet* or *pertaesum est*, *weary*, with the accusative of the person affected (§ 39, 2): *as*,

me meorum factorum atque consiliorum numquam poenitebit, *I shall never repent of my acts and counsels*. — Cic. Cat. IV. 10.

4. **Intērest** and **rēfert**, *it concerns*, — the subject of the verb being a neuter pronoun, an infinitive clause, or the subjunctive with **ut**: as,

omnem pōtentiam ad ūnum conferri pācis interfuit, *it was the interest of peace that all power should be put in one man's hands*. — Tac. Hist. I. 1.

Instead of the genitive of the personal pronoun, the possessive is used in this construction, in the abl. sing. fem.: as,

quid id rēfert tuā? *how does it concern you?* — Plaut. Rud. 178. **Rēfert** is rarely used in any other way.

NOTE. — **Intērest** is used in the three following ways: —

- (1.) Impersonally, with the genitive: as, **intērest exercītūs**, *it is for the advantage of the army*;
- (2.) Personally, with the dative: as, **intērest exercītui**, *he is present with the army*;
- (3.) With the accusative and prepositions: as, **intērest inter exercītum et castra**, *either, he is between — or, there is a difference between — the army and camp*.

5. Some verbs of plenty and want, separation and emotion: as, **quid est quod dēfensiōnis indīgeat?** *what is there that needs defence?* — Cic. Ros. Am. 12.

6. Also, sometimes, **pōtior**, *get possession of*; as always in the expression **pōtīri rērum**, *to be masters of affairs*. — Cic. Fam. I. 8.

The Genitive is also used after the adverbs **prīdiē**, *the day before*; **postrīdiē**, *the day after* (compare § 56, II. 1): as, **postridie ejus diēi**, *the next day*. — Cæs. B.G. II. 12.

NOTE. — For the Genitive of Price, see § 54, IX.

51. DATIVE.

The dative (TO or FOR) denotes the person or thing whose interest is affected. It is used —

I. With words expressing likeness, fitness, nearness, and the like: as,

similis patri, *like his father*; **prōfuit amīcis**, *he helped his friends*.

So after **misceo**, *mix*; **idem**, *same*, and many other words, especially in the poets, and in imitation of Greek usage.

With some adjectives of this class prepositions may also be used: as,

aptus ad rem militārem, *fit for military service.*

si inīquus es in me jūdex, *if you are an unfair judge towards me.* — Cic. Fam. II. 1.

When the dative is required by the structure of the sentence as a whole, rather than by any single word, it is called the dative of advantage and disadvantage (**dativus commōdi et incommodi**): as,

sine dōte posco tuam sorōrem filio, *I ask your sister for my son without a dowry.* — Plaut. Trin. II. 4, 98.

laudavit mihi frātrem, *he praised my brother* (out of regard for me: **laudavit fratrem meum** would imply no such motive).

Othōni in Hispaniam cōmes, *a companion of Otho's into Spain.* — Tac. Hist. I. 22.

To signify *in defence of*, **pro** must be used: as, **pro patriā mōri**, *to die for one's country.* — Hor. Carm. III. 2, 13.

Mihi, tibi, nobis, and **vobis** are used in questions and expressions of wonder and praise, to denote a certain interest felt: as, **quid mihi Celsus agit?** *pray, what is Celsus about?* — Hor. Ep. I. 3, 15. This is called the Ethical Dative (**dativus ethicus**).

II. As the indirect object of transitive verbs which take the accusative of the direct object: as,

hunc librum tibi mitto, *I send you this book.*

NOTE. — Motion is always expressed in prose by **in** or **ad** with the accusative; but the poets sometimes use the dative: as, **dum inferret deos Latīo**, *until he brought the gods to Latium.* — Virg. Æn. I. 5.

A few verbs of this class, as **dōno**, *present*, **induo**, *clothe*, **circumdo**, *surround*, may also take the accusative and ablative: as,

donat cōrōnas militibus, *he gives wreaths to the soldiers*; or, **donat milites cōrōnis**, *he presents the soldiers with wreaths.*

III. With many verbs (transitive in English) which signify favor, obedience, command, pardon, envy, and the like: as,

cur mihi invīdes? *why do you envy me?*

civitatī serviebat, *he served the state.*

So with adjectives or nouns derived from such verbs ; as,
invidia mihi, envy towards me ; credulus illis, trusting them.

These verbs can be used in the passive only impersonally, in which case the dative may be retained : as,

cui parci pōtuit ? who could be spared ? — Liv. XXI. 14. (§ 73, 1.)

For the dative with other Impersonals, see § 39, 1.

Sometimes the accusative of the thing is used with the dative of the person after such verbs as *impēro, command* or *require* ; *invideo, envy* or *grudge* ; *aequo, make equal* ; *minor, threaten* ; *cēdo, yield* ; *suādeo, urge* : as,

impērat oppidānis dēcem tālenta, he exacts ten talents of the townspeople.

IV. With many verbs usually governing the accusative when advantage or disadvantage is implied : thus, *consūlo*, with acc. *consult*, with dat. *consult one's interest* ; *convēnio*, with acc. *meet*, with dat. *suit* ; *mētuo, timeo*, with acc. *fear*, with dat. *be apprehensive for* ; *mōdēror, tempēro*, with acc. *arrange*, with dat. *control*. So *cāveo, beware, prospicio, foresee*, and others.

Mēdeor, mēdico, heal ; *praestōlor, wait* ; and *ausculto, hearken*, may take either dative or accusative.

V. After many verbs compounded with the following prepositions, and retaining their force in the compound : *ad, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, prae, pro, re* (insep.), *sub*, and *super* : as,

omnibus interfui proeliis, I took part in all the battles. — Cæs. B.C. III. 87.

hibernis Labiēnum praepōsuit, he placed Labienus in charge of the winter-quarters. — Cæs. B.G. I. 54.

Also active compounds of *circum, de, ab, ex* : as,
classe Caesāri ēreptā, the fleet being snatched away from Caesar.
 — Cæs. B.C. III. 111.

But when there is a distinct indication of place, the preposition is repeated : as,

dētrahere anūlum de dīgito, to withdraw a ring from the finger.

VI. After **esse**, *to be*, denoting the possessor : as,
est mihi liber, *I have a book.*
erat Dario mīte et tractābile ingēnium, *Darius had a gentle and yielding temper.* — Curt. III. 2.

This is the usual form to denote possession ; **habeo**, *I have*, generally signifying rather, *I hold*. After **nōmen est** and similar expressions, the name is usually in the dative by attraction : as,
nam mī est Auxilio nomen, *for my name is Help.* — Pl. Cist. I. 3.

VII. To signify the purpose or end, frequently joined with another dative of the person : as,
tertiam āciem nostris subsidio mīsit, *he sent the third line as a relief to our men.* — Cæs. B.G. I. 52.
tum sunt carmīna cordi, *then songs are a delight.* — Lucr. V. 1389.

VIII. After the gerundive, to denote the person to whom the necessity exists : as,
haec vobis provincia est defendenda, *this province is for you to defend* [to be defended by you]. — Cic. Leg. Man. 6, 14.

Often, also, with perfect participles ; with **vidēri**, *seem* ; and, in the poets and later writers, with almost any passive verb : as,
nulla tuārum audita mihi nēque visa sōrōrum, *no one of thy sisters has been either heard or seen by me.* — Virg. Æn. I. 326.

52. ACCUSATIVE.

The Accusative is the case of the direct object. It is used —

I. After transitive verbs : as,
lēgatiōnem suscepit, *he undertook the embassy.* — Cæs. B.G. I. 3.

Many neuter verbs are sometimes used transitively : as,
meum cāsum luctumque dōluērunt, *they have bewailed my misfortune and grief.* — Cic. Sest. 69, 145.

Titius, Pindārici fontis qui non expalluit haustus, *Titius, who did not turn pale at draughts of the Pindaric fount.* — Hor. Ep. I. 3, 10.

So occasionally in the passive: as,

ridētur ab omni conventu, he is laughed at by the whole assembly. — Hor. Sat. I. 7, 22.

This occurs especially with verbs of tasting, smelling, &c: as,

Epīcūrus, hōmo mīnīme rēsīpiens patriam, Epicurus, a man who smacked very little [i.e. possessed very little of the characteristic wit] of his native country. — Cic. N.D. II. 17.

Also with accusatives of meaning *cognate* to that of the verb: as, *vīvēre eam vītā, to live that kind of life.* — Cic. de Sen. 21.

II. After many neuter verbs, which become active when compounded with prepositions. These include —

1. Verbs of motion: as,

dēlūbra deum ādībīs, thou wilt visit the shrines of the gods. — Lucr. VI. 75.

2. Compounds of *circum* and some other prepositions: as,

cīves qui circumstant sēnātum, the citizens who throng about the Senate. — Cic. Cat. I. 8.

III. As a secondary object (1) after verbs of asking and teaching; also *cēlo, hide*: as,

hoc vos dōceo, I teach you this. — Cic. de Orat. II. 47.

nihil suprà deos lācesso, nec pōtentem āmicum largiōra flāgīto, I do not importune the gods for any thing more, nor do I demand more liberal gifts from a powerful friend. — Hor. Carm. II. 18, 11.

So with passives: as,

Cāto, rōgātus sententiam, ōrātiōnem hābuit, Cato, being asked his opinion, delivered a speech. — Sall. Cat. 52.

The ablative with a preposition is often used after these verbs: always, to express the person, after *pēto, postūlo, and quaero*: as, *pācem ab Rōmānis pētiērunt, they begged peace from the Romans.* — Cæs. B.G. II. 13.

(2) After many active verbs compounded with prepositions: as, *Hibērum cōpiās trajēcit, he threw his forces across the Iber.* — Liv. XXI. 23.

(3) In Apposition after verbs of choosing, &c. (See § 46.)

IV. In neuter pronouns and adjectives of number (in an adverbial sense), especially with neuter verbs : as,
quidve mōror, or why do I delay ? — Virg. *Æn.* II. 101.
pauca milītes hortātus, having briefly exhorted the soldiers. — Sall. Jug. 49.

So id tempōris, at this time ; meam vicem, on my part.

Similar to this is the so-called Synecdochical or Greek Accusative, used by the poets to denote the part affected : as,
flāvāque cāput nectentur olivā, and their heads shall be wreathed with yellow olive. — Virg. *Æn.* V. 309.

So with the passive (used reflectively) of *cingo* and similar verbs : as,

Inūtile ferrum cingitur, he girds on his useless sword. — Virg. *Æn.* II. 510.

V. In exclamations : as,

O fortunātam rempublicam ! O fortunate republic ! — Cic. Cat. II. 4.

VI. As subject of the infinitive in dependent clauses, after verbs of knowing, thinking, hearing, wishing, and telling (*verba sentiendi et declarandi*).

See, for examples of this use, *Oratio Obliqua* (§ 67, I. 2), and *Substantive Clauses* (§ 70, III.).

NOTE. — For the accusatives of time and place, see § 55. — For the accusative after prepositions, see § 56.

53. VOCATIVE.

The Vocative is used in direct address : as,

Septīmi, Gādes adiūtūre mēcum, Septimius, who art ready to go with me to Gades. — Hor. Carm. II. 6, 1.

Sometimes the nominative is used instead : as,
almae filius Maiae, O son of benignant Maia. — Hor. Carm. I. 2, 43.

audi, tu pōpulus Albānus, hear, thou people of Alba. — Liv. I. 24.

54. ABLATIVE.

The Ablative, in general, implies either instrument or separation. It is used —

I. To express cause, means, and specification: as,

vultu Milōnis perterritus, *scared by the countenance of Milo.*
— Cic. Mil. 15, 41.

nec tantum Phoebo gaudet Parnasiā rūpēs, *nor does the cliff of Parnassus delight so much in Phoebus.* — Virg. Buc. VI. 29.

ferro rumpenda per hostes est via, *a road must be cut through the enemy with the sword.* — Id. Æn. X. 371.

suo jure noster ille Ennius sanctos appellat poētas, *with peculiar right our Ennius calls poets holy.* — Cic. Arch. 8.

certē non tūlit ullos haec civitas aut glōriā clāriōres, aut auctōritāte grāviōres, aut hūmānitāte pōlitiōres, *certainly this city never produced any more illustrious in glory, or weighty in authority, or refined in culture.* — Cic. de Orat. II. 37.

The motive which influences the mind of the person acting is expressed by the ablative alone; the object exciting the emotion requires **ob** or **propter** with the accusative: as,

nōn ob praedam aut spōliandi cūpīdīne, *not for booty, or through the desire of plundering.* — Tac. Hist. I. 63.

So **causā** and **grātiā** after a genitive, or **causā** with a possessive: as,

legātōs ad Caesārem sui purgandī grātiā mittunt, *they send deputies to Caesar for the purpose of clearing themselves.*
— Cæs. B.G. VII. 43.

meā causā, *for my sake.* — Ter. Eun. V. 8, 40 (1070).

With living beings, instrumentality is expressed by **per**, or by **ōpērā** with a genitive or possessive: as,

pēr Antiōchum, *by the aid of Antiochus.* — Liv. XXXIII. 18.

meā ōpērā, *by my aid.* — Cic. de Sen. 4. So **per vim** (as well as the ablative **vi**), *by force.* — Cæs. B.G. I. 14.

NOTE. — For the ablative of crime and penalty, see § 50, iv. 2.

II. With an adjective or a limiting genitive, to denote manner and quality: as,

pöpulus magnā vöce me vērē jūrasse jūrāvit, *the people swore with a loud voice that I had sworn truly.* — Cic. Fam. V. 2.

mōre hōmīnum invīdent, *after the manner of men they envy.* — Cic. pro Balbo, 26.

ānīmo mēliōre sunt quam pars patrīciōrum, *they are better disposed than a portion of the patricians.* — Cic. Cat. II. 12.

hōmīnis esse spēcīē deos confitendum est, *we must admit that the gods are of human form.* — Cic. N.D. I. 18.

Manner is also expressed by **cum**, and in a few cases by the ablative alone: as,

mīnus cum cūrā, *less carefully.* — Plaut. M.G. III. 1, 6.

hōc ōnus fēram stūdio ēt industriā, *I will bear this burden zealously and diligently.* — Cic. Rosc. Am. 4.

Accompaniment properly requires **cum**: as,

nostrī cum fundītōribus sāgittāriisque flūmen transgressi, *our troops having crossed the river with the slingers and archers.* — Cæs. B.G. II. 19. (But see § 25, end.)

Verbs of contending take **cum** (or dat. in poetry).

There is no essential distinction between the ablative and the genitive of quality (§ 50, i. 2), except that the genitive is exclusively used to denote measure, classification, or requirement: as,
suādēre princīpi multi lābōris, *to counsel a prince is a thing requiring great labor.* — Tac. Hist. I. 15.

III. With the verbs **ūtor**, *use*; **fruor**, *enjoy*; **fungor**, *fulfil*; **pōtior**, *get*; **vescor**, *feed*, and most of their compounds; also **dignor**, *deem worthy*:

ūtar vestrā bēnignitāte, *I will avail myself of your kindness.* — Cic. Arch. 8.

Pōtior also governs the genitive, as always in the expression, **pōtīri rērum**, *to possess the power.* — Cic. Fam. I. 8.

IV. After the adjectives **dignus**, *worthy*; **indignus**, *unworthy*, **frētus**, *relying*, and **praeditus**, *endowed*: as,

deā carminē dignā est, *the goddess is worthy of song.* — Ov. Met. V. 344.

V. After comparatives, instead of *quam*, *than*: as,
ōcior eurō [equivalent to *ōcior quam eurus*], *swifter than the east wind*. — Virg. *Æn.* VIII. 223.

The adverbs *plus*, *amplius*, *more*; *minus*, *less*, with several comparatives of measure or distance, are often used without *quam*, leaving the grammatical structure of the sentence unchanged: as,

plus septingenti capti, *more than seven hundred were taken*. — Liv. XLI. 12.

plus tertiā parte interfectā, *more than a third being slain*. — Cæs. B.G. III. 6.

spātium non amplius pēdum sexcentorum, *a space not broader than 600 feet*. — Id. 38.

The ablative also shows the degree of difference: as,
quo minus cupiditātis, eo plus auctoritatis, *the less greed, the more weight*. — Liv. XXIV. 28.

VI. After words implying separation, and plenty or want: as,

Fōrum Appi, differtum nautis, *Forum Appii, crammed with bargemen*. — Hor. Sat. I. 5, 3.

Ephōrus calcārībus eget, *Ephorus needs the spur*. — Quint. X. 1.
cūris hōmīnum gaudia misces, *thou minglest joys with the cares of men*. — Cat. 64.

magno me mōtu liberābis, *you will free me from great fear*. — Cic. Cat. I. 5.

Prepositions express the place more definitely: as,
exīre ex urbe, *to go out from the city*. — Cic. Cat. I. 5.

NOTE. — For the genitive of plenty or want, see § 50, III. 2.

VII. After *opus* and *ūsus*, *need*: as,
nunc virībus ūsus, *now there is need of strength*. — Virg. *Æn.* VIII. 441.

So, often, the abl. neuter of the perfect participle: as,
cauto opust, *we need caution*. — Plaut. Capt. II. 1, 28.

Opus (rarely *ūsus*) may also stand in apposition with the thing needed: as,

illud quod maxime opus est, *that which is most needed*. — Ter. Ad. IV. 7, 22 (740).

VIII. Often, without a preposition, after perfect participles denoting origin: as,

Cērēre nāti, the children of Ceres. — Cic. N.D. II. 24.

But the prepositions *ab*, *de*, *ex*, are frequently used, — regularly, in speaking of remote descent: as,

ab his majōribus orti, born of these ancestors. — Hor. Sat. I. 5.

IX. To denote price: as,

signa sestertium sex millibus quingentis vendita, the statues were sold for six thousand five hundred sesterces. — Cic. Verr. IV. 6.

stābunt tibi tua foedera magno, your treaty will cost you dear. — Ov. Met. VII. 486.

To express *indefinite* price or value, the genitive is used: —

1. Of neuter adjectives, with verbs of valuing: as,

magni intērest esse kalendis Jānuāriis in republica duo consules, it is of great importance that on the first day of January there should be two consuls in the commonwealth. — Cic. Mur. 37.

With other verbs, the ablative must be used, except these genitives: *tanti, so much; quanti, how much; plūria, more; minōria, less.*

2. Of certain nouns: as,

falso an vērō laudent non flocci faciunt, whether they praise truly or falsely, they care not a straw. — Plaut. Trin. 210.

The genitives so used are *nihīli, nothing, assis, farthing, flocci, lock of wool*, and a few others.

X. ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE. — Two ablatives, generally a noun and participle, often stand in apposition with each other, having no grammatical dependence on the sentence in which they occur. This is called the Ablative Absolute: as,

Pharsālico proelio facto, a Caesāre discessit, after the battle of Pharsalia had been fought, he departed from Caesar. — Cic. pro Deiot. 5.

dis immortalibus dūcibus, under the guidance of the immortal gods. — Id. Cat. II. 9.

NOTE. — One ablative is always Subject, and the other Predicate, in the clause in which they stand.

Sometimes the participle or an adjective is in apposition with a phrase or clause, or is used adverbially: as,

incerto quid pētērent, since it was uncertain what they sought. auspicato, after taking the auspices. — Tac. Hist. I. 84.

NOTE. — For the ablative, to denote the agent after passive verbs, see § 56, IV. — For prepositions governing the ablative, see § 42, II. — For the ablative of Time and Place, see § 55.

55. TIME AND PLACE.

I. Time *when* takes the ablative; time *how long*, the accusative: as,

adventu in Galliam Caesāris, at the arrival of Cæsar in Gaul.

— Cæs. B.G. V. 54.

dies continuos triginta, for thirty days together. — Id. 13.

paucis post diēbus, a few days after. — Cæs. B.C. III. 82.

Post is here an adverb; it may also be *post paucos dies*. The same usage exists with *ante, before*, and with *ab, away from*.

1. The use of a preposition gives more precision: as,
in diēbus proximis dēcem, within the next ten days. — Sall. Jug. 28.

lūdi per dēcem dies, games through ten days. — Cic. Cat. III. 8.

2. Rarely the ablative expresses duration of time: as,
quattuordēcim annis exsiliū tōlērāvit, he endured exile fourteen years. — Tac. Ann. I. 53.

II. Extent of space takes the accusative: as,
fossas quindēcim pēdēs lātas, trenches fifteen feet broad. — Cæs. B.G. VII. 72. (Compare § 54, v.)

Measure is often expressed by the genitive: as,
vallo pēdum xii, in circuitu xv mīlium sese continēbant, they kept close in an entrenchment of twelve feet [height], and of fifteen miles' circuit. — Cæs. B.G. II. 30.

Distance takes the accusative or ablative: as,
Zāma quinque diērum iter ā Carthāgīne ābest, Zama is a five days' journey distant from Carthage. — Liv. XXX. 29.
triginta mīlibus passuum infra eum locum, thirty miles below that place. — Cæs. B.G. VI. 35.

III. To express relations of place, prepositions are necessary, except with the names of towns and small islands; also *dōmus*, *home*, *rūs*, *the country*, and a few other nouns in special relations. With these nouns —

1. The name of the place *from which* is in the ablative: as, *Brundūsio profectus es*, *you set out from Brundisium*. — Cic. Att. I. 15, 2.

2. The name of the place *to which* is in the accusative: as, *cum e Ciliciā decēdens Rhōdum vēnissem*, *when, on my way from Cilicia, I had reached Rhodes*. — Cic. Brut. 1. *rus cras cum filio ibo*, *to-morrow I will go into the country with my son*. — Ter. Ad. V. 3, 54.

Prepositions must be used to denote neighborhood: as, *ad Tarentum*, *to (not into) Tarentum*. — Cic. de Senect. 4.

3. The name of the place *where* was originally put in a special case called the Locative. This case ended in *i*, and is generally the same in form with the Dative: as, *Rōmae*, *at Rome*; *Karthāgīni*, *at Carthage*; *Athēnis*, *at Athens*; *Curibus*, *at Cures*.

In the second declension the old form in *i* is retained: as, *Corinthi*, *at Corinth*; *Lanuvi*, *at Lanuvium*.

In the third declension this case sometimes ends in *ē*, like the ablative, especially when the metre requires it in poetry: as, *Tībūrē vel Gābiis*, *at Tibur or Gabii*. — Hor. Ep. II. 2, 3.

So *dōmī*, *at home*; *bellī militiæ*, *in military service*; *humī*, *on the ground*; *rūrī*, *in the country* (*rurē* is *from the country*). *hiēmāre Dyrrachii, Apolloniæ, omnibusque oppīdis mārītīmīs*, *to winter in Dyrrachium, Apollonia, and all the seaboard towns*. — Cæs. B.C. III. 5.

erat ēdictum Pompēi nōmīne Amphipōli prōpōsitum, *an order had been put up in Pompey's name at Amphipolis*. — Id. 102. *Velis de caelo lapīdāverat*, *it had rained stones at Veii*. — Liv. XXVII. 37.

te dōmī mănēbo, *I will wait for you at home*. — Hor. Ep. I. 5, 3.

4. A possessive may stand with *dōmus*: as, *domi suæ*, *at his own house*. — Cic. Mil. 7.

When it is modified in any other way, a preposition is generally used: as,

in M. Laecae dōmum, *into the house of Marcus Læca*. — Cic. Cat. I. 4.

5. The preposition is omitted before the ablative of a few other nouns: as,

terrā mārīque, *by land and sea*. — Tib. I. 3, 56.

tōtā Siciliā, *through all Sicily*. — Cic. Verr. IV. 23.

So, very commonly, in poetry: as,

litōre curvo, *on the curving shore*. — Virg. Æn. III. 16.

IV. The way *by which* is put in the ablative: as,

Aurēliā viā prōfectus est, *he set out by the Aurelian Way*. — Cic. Cat. II. 4.

56. PREPOSITIONS.

I. Twenty-six prepositions govern the accusative, and ten the ablative. (See § 42.)

1. **In** and **sub** take the accusative when they denote motion; the ablative when they denote rest: as,

Aristīdes in contiōnem vēnit, *Aristides came into the assembly*. — Cic. de Off. III. 11.

Thēmistōcles dixit in contiōne, *Themistocles said in the assembly*. — Id.

sub monte consēdit, *he encamped at the foot of a mountain*. — Cæs. B.G. I. 48.

sub vespērum Caesar portas claudī jussit, *towards evening Caesar ordered the gates to be shut*. — Id. II. 33.

But after verbs of placing, **in** usually takes the ablative: as,
exercītum in hibernis collōcāvit, *he established the army in winter-quarters*. — Cæs. B.G. III. 29.

2. **Sūper** governs the ablative when it means *concerning*; otherwise the accusative (or abl. in poetry): as,

hac sūper rē, *concerning this matter*. — Cic. Att. XVI. 16.

summa sūper culmīna tectī, *over the roof of the house*. — Virg. Æn. II. 694.

3. **Subter** governs the accusative; but sometimes the ablative in poetry: as,

subter fastigia tecti, *below the roof of the house*. — Virg. *Æn.*

VIII. 366.

subter litōre, *below the shore*. — Catull. 65, 7.

4. In giving the day of the month, the preposition **ante**, *before*, is usually omitted: as,

xv. k̄alendas Augustas, *the fifteenth day before the kalends of August* (July 18). — Tac. Hist. II. 91.

Often **ante diem** (a. d.), with an ordinal, is used like a preposition governing an accusative: as,

is dies erat a. d. v. kal. Apr., *this day was the fifth day before the kalends of April* (March 28). — Cæs. B.G. I. 6.

This phrase may even be governed by a preposition: as,

in a. d. v. k̄alendas Nōvembres, *to the fifth day before the kalends of November* (October 28). — Cic. Cat. I. 3.

5. **Tēnus** (which follows its noun) sometimes governs the genitive: as,

Corōȳrae tēnus, *as far as Corcyra*. — Liv. XXVI. 24.

But regularly it takes the ablative: as,

cāpūlo tēnūs, *up to the hilt*. — Virg. *Æn.* V. 553.

II. Certain adverbs are sometimes construed like prepositions: —

1. **Prīdiē**, **postrīdiē**, **prōpius**, **proxīme**, **versus**, and **usque**, and (less frequently) the adjectives **prōpior** and **proxīmus**, may be followed by the accusative (Compare § 50, end): as,

prīdie nōnas Jūnias, *the day before the nones of June* (June 4).

— Cic. Fam. III. 4. 1.

2 The adverb **pālam** may govern the ablative: as,

pālam duōbus exercītibus, *in the presence of two armies*. — Liv. XXV. 18.

3. **Clam** may take either accusative or ablative: as,

clam mātrem suam, *without her mother's knowledge*. — Plaut. M.G. 112 (II. 1, 33).

clam vōbis, *without your knowledge*. — Cæs. B.C. II. 32.

And prepositions are often used as adverbs.

III. Some prepositions which imply comparison, as *ante*, *before*; *post*, *after*, — like the adverb *prius*, *before*, — are followed, like comparatives, by *quam*; several words, or even clauses, sometimes coming between: as,

nēque ante dimisit eum quam fidem dedit, *nor did he let him go until he gave a pledge.* — Liv. XXXIX. 10.

IV. The ablative, with *a* or *ab*, is regularly used after passive verbs, to denote the agent, if a person, or if spoken of as a person: as,

Turpilius, jussus a Mētello causam dicere, *Turpilius, being ordered by the consul to plead his cause.* — Sall. Jug. 69.

This use of the ablative of the *agent* must be carefully distinguished from the ablative of *instrument*: as,

occisus gladio, *slain by a sword*; but *occisus ab hoste*, *slain by an enemy*.

NOTE. — For the so-called dative of the agent with the gerundive, see §§ 51, VIII 73, I.

III. SYNTAX OF THE VERB.

57. SEQUENCE OF TENSES. (See § 27.)

The Tenses of Finite Moods are distributed into two classes: —

1. PRIMARY, including the Present, both Futures, and Perfect (definite).

2. SECONDARY, including the Imperfect, Perfect (historical), and Pluperfect.

In compound sentences, a Primary tense in the leading clause is followed by a Primary tense in the dependent clause; and a Secondary tense is followed by a Secondary: as,

vēnit ut nos videat, *he comes to see us.*

vēnit ut nos videat, *he is come to see us.*

vēnit ut nos vidēret, *he came to see us.*

vēni ut nos videas, *come to see us.*

I. The Perfect Subjunctive is regularly a primary tense, and is used to express any past action depending upon a verb in a primary tense: as,

ex epistolis intelligi licet, quam frequens fuerit Platonis auditor, *it may be judged from his epistles how constant a listener to Plato he was.* — Cic. Orat. 4.

But occasionally it is used in an aoristic sense: as,

eō discordiæ ventum, ut ad Vitellium perfugerit, *the dissension reached such a height that he fled to Vitellius.* — Tac. Hist. I. 60.

In this way a perfect subjunctive or infinitive, depending upon a primary tense, may itself be followed by secondary tenses: as,
sic mihi perspicere videor, ita natos esse nos ut inter omnes esset societas quædam, *I think that I see that we were so born that there exists among all a certain alliance.* — Cic. de Amic. 5.

The perfect subjunctive is also used for a future perfect: as,
ostendit si sublata sit venditio bonorum, illum pecuniam grandem amissurum, *he shows that if the sale of the property shall be stopped, he will lose much money [si sublata erit, amittet].* — Cic. Rosc. Am. 38.

II. The Present is often used in narrative for the Historical Perfect, and may be followed by Secondary Tenses: as,
Senatus decernit uti in liberis custodiis haberentur, *the Senate decrees that they should be held in free custody.* — Sall. Cat. 47.

III. The Tenses denoting completed action are used much more accurately in Latin than in English: as,
si eris meritus, fiet, *if you deserve [shall have deserved], it shall be done.* — Plaut. Trin. IV. 3, 61.
vivo et regno simul ista reliqui quæ vos ad caelum fertis, *I live and reign, as soon as I leave [have left] those scenes which you extol to heaven.* — Hor. Ep. I. 10, 8.

After **postquam, posteâquam,** and **tibi,** the Perfect is used where we should expect the Pluperfect: as,

postquam id animum advertit, *when he had perceived this.* — Cæs. B.G. I. 24.

Dum, while (not *as long as*), is usually followed by the Present Indicative, even when referring to past time: as,

dum haec in colloquio geruntur, Caesāri nuntiātum est, *while these things were going on in the conference, it was announced to Cæsar.* — Cæs. B.G. I. 46.

The Perfect Indefinite is often found (followed by secondary tenses), where the regular Perfect would be used in English: as,
mihi ut urbī sātis esset praesīdii consultum atque prōvisum est, *I have considered and provided that the city should have a sufficient guard.* — Cic. Cat. II. 12.

IV. In dependent clauses, the tenses of the infinitive have no time of their own, but are present, past, or future, relatively to the time of the verb upon which they depend: as,
nostros non esse infēriōres intellexit, *he ascertained that our men were not inferior.* — Cæs. B.G. II. 8.

quam Jūno fertur terris māgis omnibus cōluisse, *which Juno is said to have cherished above all lands.* — Virg. Æn. I. 15.
spērant se maximum fructum esse captūros, *they hope to receive the greatest advantages.* — Cic. de Amic. 21.

The present infinitive, after a verb in the past, must often be rendered by the perfect infinitive in English; this is most frequent with **pōtui, could; dēbui, oportuit, ought:** as,

scīre potuit, *he might have known.* — Cic. pro Mil. 17.

qui videbatur omnino mōri non debuisse, *who seemed one that ought not to have died at all.* — Cic. pro Arch. 8.

Mēmīni, and some other verbs, in an account of what the speaker has personally witnessed, take the present infinitive: as,
mēmīni Cātōnem mēcum dissērere, *I remember Cato's discoursing with me.* — Cic. de Amic. 3.

V. The statement of a general truth, following a secondary tense, observes the rule of connection of tenses: as,
jūdicābant esse aliquid nātūrā pulchrum atque praeclārum quod suā sponte pētērētur, *they were of opinion that there is something beautiful and glorious by nature, which is sought for its own sake.* — Cic. de Senect. 13.

NOTE. — In letters, secondary tenses are often used for primary; as if the letter were *dated* when it is *received*.

58. MOODS.

The Moods of a Latin verb are the Indicative, Subjunctive, Imperative, and Infinitive.

I. The Indicative is regularly employed for the leading verb of a sentence: it is used in direct assertions or questions, and in historical narrative.

II. The Subjunctive is used chiefly for dependent constructions,—especially to denote any thing as contingent, conceived of, or desired,—its tense being determined by that of the verb on which it depends. (See § 57.) In particular it is found,—

1. In many Conditional sentences, the condition being often implied, §§ 59, 60, 61, 62.

2. In certain relations of Cause or Motive, § 63.

3. In clauses which express Purpose or Result, §§ 64, 65.

4. In intermediate and subordinate clauses, chiefly relative or interrogative, §§ 66, 67.

5. In wishes and commands (in the present and perfect), to take the place of the Imperative, § 68.

III. The Imperative is used in commands; also, in early writers and poets, in prohibitions: as,

consûlîte vōbis, prospicîte patriae, conservâte vos. *take measures for your safety, provide for the country, preserve yourselves.* — Cic. Cat. IV. 2.

nîmîum ne crēde cōlōri, *do not trust complexion overmuch.* — Virg. Buc. II. 17.

Prohibitions are regularly expressed by the second person singular of the perfect subjunctive with *nē*; *nōli* with the infinitive; or by *cāve* with the subjunctive: as,

ne territûs fuēris, *be not terrified.* — Tac. Hist. I. 16.

nōli pûtāre, *do not think.* — Cic. Brut. 33.

cāve faxis, *do not do it.* — Ter. Heaut. 187 (I. 2. 13).

The future imperative is used where there is a distinct reference to future time, especially in statutes, edicts, and wills: as,
cum valetudîni tuae consulueris, tum consulîto navigationi, *take care of your health first; then look to your sailing.* — Cic. Fam. XVI. 4. (See § 24, III. 2.)

IV. The Infinitive, with or without a subject accusative, is construed either as the subject or as the object of the leading verb. In this use, it is found especially in the construction called *oratio obliqua*. (See § 67.)

In other cases, hardly any tense is used except the present, expressing no distinct relation of time: as,

mitto quaerere, *I refrain from asking*. — Cic. Rosc. Am. 19.

The poets and later writers use the infinitive after adjectives, or to express a purpose: as,

dūrus componere versūs, *harsh in composing verses*. — Hor. Sat. I. 4, 8.

furit tē reperire, *he rages to find thee*: — Id. Carm. I. 15, 27.

It may also be used (with subject-acc.) in Exclamations: as,
te in tantas aerumnas propter me incidisse! *alas, that you should fall into such grief for me!* — Cic. Fam. XIV. 1.

59. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

I. When any thing is stated, the truth of which is made to depend on the truth of some other statement, contained in a subordinate clause, the sentence is called a Conditional Sentence.

The Principal clause — that containing the conclusion — is called the *apodōsis*; the Subordinate clause — that stating the condition — is called the *protasis*: as,

si qui exire vult, connivere possum, *if any wish to depart (protasis), I can keep my eyes shut (apodosis)*. — Cic. Cat. II. 12.

II. The statement of the condition in Latin (*protasis*) is regularly introduced by *si*, *if*; *sin*, *but if*; *nisi*, *unless*; but a clause introduced by an indefinite relative (*whoever*), or a relative conjunction (*when*, *since*, and the like), may be considered as equivalent to a conditional clause: as,

quam se cumque in partem dedisset, omnium fuit facile princeps, *in whatever direction he applied himself, he easily took the first place*. — Cic. de Off. III. 16.

The statement of the consequence or result depends in form on the grammatical structure of the sentence, which may require a participle, infinitive, or phrase: as,

quod si praeterea nemo sequatur, tamen se cum sola decima legione iturum, de qua non dubitaret, but if no one else would follow, still he would go with the tenth legion alone, of which he had no doubt. — Cæs. B.G. I. 40.

si quos adversum proelium et fuga Gallorum commoveret, hos si quaerere reperire posse, if any were troubled by this check, and by the flight of the Gauls, they might find if they would ask. — Id.

III. Any tense of the Indicative may be used to express both condition and result in its appropriate time: as,

si ergo apud inferos miseri non sunt, ne sunt quidem apud inferos ulli, if, therefore, the wretched are not in the infernal regions, there is no one there at all. — Cic. Tusc. I. 6.

sanaabimur si volumus, we shall be healed if we wish. — Id.

III. 6.

quicquid iurarunt, ventus et unda rapit, whatever they have sworn [i.e., if they have sworn any thing], the winds and waves sweep away. — Prop. II. 28, 8.

IV. The Subjunctive is used in both members of conditional sentences: —

1. The Present, in reference to future time, to express a supposition less vividly or as less probable than when the future indicative is used: as,

nec si munerebus certas, concedat Iollas, nor if you should vie in gifts, would Iollas yield. — Virg. Buc. II. 57.

haec si tecum patria loquatur, nonne impetrare debeat? If thy country should thus speak to thee, ought she not to prevail? — Cic. Cat. I. 8.

Often the future indicative stands in the apodosis; as,

si deficient vires, audacia certe laus erit, if strength should fail, boldness at least will have praise. — Prop. II. 10, 5.

2. The Secondary tenses, when the supposition is known to be false; the imperfect referring to present time, the pluperfect to past: as,

si meum consilium auctoritasque vāluisset, tu hōdiē ēgēres, nos libēri essēmus, respublica non tot dūces et exercitus amīsisset, if my judgment and authority had prevailed [as they did not], you would this day be poor [which you are not], we should be free, the republic would not have lost so many leaders and armies. — Cic. Phil. II. 15.

The indicative (in apodosis) sometimes expresses what ought to have been done, or is intended, or already begun : **as**,

si Rōmae Cn. Pompēius prīvātus esset hoc tempōrē, tāmen is ērat dēlligendū, if Cnæus Pompey were a private citizen at Rome at this time, nevertheless he ought to be selected. — Cic. Leg. Man. 17.

in amplexū filiae ruēbat, nīsi lictores obstītissent, he was about rushing into his daughter's arms, unless the lictors had prevented. — Tac. Ann. XVI. 32.

When a subjunctive is required in the apodosis of a conditional clause, by the structure of the sentence of which it forms a part, the pluperfect may be represented by the participle in **rus** with the perfect subjunctive of **esse** : **as**,

ādeo pārāta sēdītio fuit, ut Othōnem raptūri fuērint, nī incerta noctis tīmuissent, so far advanced was the conspiracy, that they would have seized upon Otho if they had not feared the uncertainties of the night [rāpuissent nī tīmuissent following ut]. — Tac. Hist. I. 26.

3. The Subjunctive is sometimes used to express a condition of a general nature, referring indefinitely to any one of a series of acts ; in this case the indicative is used in the apodosis to state a repeated or customary action, or general truth : **as**,

mēmōria mīnuītur nīsi eam exerceas, the memory grows weak unless you exercise it. — Cic. Sen. 7.

id ūbi dixisset, hastam in fines eōrum mittebat, when he [the herald] had said this, he would throw [used to throw] a spear into their territories. — Liv. I. 32.

NOTE. — Verbs expressing power, propriety, etc., may take the indicative in apodosis ; the imperfect to express present time, the perfect and pluperfect for past : **as, satius erat, it were better.**

60. IMPLIED CONDITIONS.

The subordinate member of a conditional sentence (that containing the condition), is frequently omitted. Under this head belong most of the subjunctives which appear to be independent verbs, and which would not always take this mood if the condition were fully stated (See § 68).

In this usage the perfect subjunctive is especially common; and the second person singular, to denote some indefinite person.

The Subjunctive in implied conditions is employed as in the following examples: —

1. In its so-called Potential use, referring to an indefinite subject: as,

tum in lecto quōque vidēres sūsurros, then on each couch you might see whisperings. — Hor. Sat. II. 8, 77.

Here a complete sentence would require the pluperfect: thus, *vidisses si adfuisses, you would have seen if you had been there.*

2. In cautious, modest, or hypothetical statement: as, *nec ullam mōrum partem māgis laudāvēris, nor would one commend more highly any one of their customs.* — Tac. Germ. 17. *vēlim sic tibi persuādeas, I wish you would persuade yourself of this.* — Cic. Fam. XV. 4.

vellem adesset M. Antōnius, I wish Mark Antony were present. — Id. Phil. I. 7.

Vēlim refers to future time, *vellem* to present or past time, in a wish for something known to be impossible.

3. In questions asked with a certain hesitation or doubt: as, *quid ēgo carmine plūra commēmōrem? why should I relate more in verse?* — Catull. 64, 116.

4. In conceding a point, or supposing a case; — here the inference or conclusion is the clause omitted: as,

fuērit ille Brūtus, qui dōmīnātu rēgio rempublicam libērāvit, suppose there was a Brutus who freed the republic from the tyranny of the kings. — Cic. Phil. I. 6.

si jam sint id ādepti, suppose they have already obtained it. — Id. Cat. II. 9.

61. CONDITIONAL PARTICLES.

Certain Particles implying a condition are followed by the Subjunctive. These are —

1. Particles of comparison, — *tamquam*, *quāsi*, *vēluti*, &c.: as,

tamquam mōdo ex deōrum concilio descendisset, as if he had just come down from the council of the gods. — Cic. N.D. I. 8.

quāsi plūres fortunāti sint quam infēlices, as if more were fortunate than unfortunate. — Cic. Tusc. I. 36.

2. The concessive particles, *quamvis*, *however much*; *licet* and *ut*, *granting that*; *cum*, *although*; and, in later writers, *quamquam*, *although*: as,

itāque eum qui audiunt, quamvis ipsi infantes sint, tamen illo mōdo confidunt se posse dicere, therefore those who hear him, however incapable of speaking they may themselves be, nevertheless feel confident that they can speak in that manner. — Cic. Orat. 23.

ut nēmīnem ālium nisi T. Pātinam rōgasset, scire pōtuit, even if he had asked no one but Titus Patina, he might have known. — Cic. Mil. 17.

quamquam per dictatorem dilectus hābitus esset, although the levy had been held under the authority of the dictator. — Liv. II. 32.

cum mercēde dōcēret, although he taught for pay. — Cic. de Orat. I. 28.

Quamquam and *etsi* introduce the statement of a fact, and regularly take the indicative; *quamvis*, *licet*, and *ut*, of a supposed case, and take the subjunctive; *cum*, signifying *although*, while used as equivalent to *quamquam*, takes the subjunctive by special use. (See § 62, 1.)

3. *Dum*, *dummōdō*, and *mōdō*, *provided*: as,
multa admiranda sunt, eligere mōdo cūrae sit, many points are deserving of admiration, provided there be care in selecting. — Quint. X. 1, 131.

NOTE. — A Relative is often equivalent to a Demonstrative preceded by a Conditional, Causal, or Final Particle. (See §§ 63, 64.)

62. RELATIONS OF TIME.

I. **Cum** (quum), meaning *when*, takes the indicative; *since*, or *although*, the subjunctive: as,

cum se inter equitum turmas insinuāvērunt, *when they have worked their way among the troops of horse*. — Cæs. B.G. IV. 33.

cum solitudo et vita sine amicis insidiarum et metus plena sit, *since solitude and a life without friends is full of treachery and fear*. — Cic. de Fin. I. 20.

But **cum**, *when*, is followed by the secondary tenses of the subjunctive in narration: as,

cum essem in Cērāmīco, *when I was in the Ceramicus*. — Cic. Att. I. 10.

II. **Dum**, **dōnēc**, **quoad**, *until*; and **antēquam**, **priusquam**, *before*, may take the subjunctive, —

1. In reference to future time;

2. To express something desired or anticipated; or,

3. (The secondary tenses) in historical narration: as,

priusquam ad portum vēnias, *before you come to the harbor*. — Ter. Ad. IV. 2, 44.

dum novī māgistrātūs sortirentur prōvincias, **M. Baebius transire in Epīrum est jussus**, *until the new magistrates should draw lots for their provinces, Marcus Baebius was ordered to cross into Epirus*. — Liv. XXXV. 24.

festinandum cōtēris vidēbātur, antēquam crescēret invālida adhuc conjūrātio, *the others were of opinion that it was best to hasten, before the yet weak conspiracy should gather strength*. — Tac. Hist. I. 33.

trēpīdātiōnis ālīquantum ēlēphantī ēdēbant, dōnēc quīētem ipse tīmor fēcisset, *the elephants caused some confusion, until their very fear had caused quiet*. — Liv. XXI. 28.

These particles also sometimes take the subjunctive in statements of a general truth or customary action: as,

priusquam populus suffragium ineat, in incertum comitiōrum eventum patres auctores fiunt, *before the people come to the vote, the senate forestall the uncertain result of the election*. — Liv. I. 17.

63. CAUSE OR REASON.

I. The conjunctions **quod** (sometimes **quā**), *because*, and **quōniam** and **quando**, *since*, are followed by the subjunctive when the reason is stated not as a fact, but as a motive in the mind of another, and even of the speaker or writer himself: as,

Drusus rettulit ad Sēnātum dē illo quod in eum ordinem consul tam grāviter in contiōne esset invecus, *Drusus laid his [Philippus's] case before the Senate, on the ground that he, although consul, had inveighed so bitterly against that body in the public assembly.* — Cic. de Orat. III. 1.

accēdit illa quōque causa, quod a cetēris forsitan itā pētītum sit ut dicērent, ut utrumvis salvo officio facere se posse arbitarentur, *there is this reason besides [in my own mind], that others have perhaps been invited to speak, in such a way that they supposed they might act either way with a clear conscience.* — Id. Rosc. Am. 1. (See § 66, 1.)

Non quō (negatively **non quin**) is often used for **non quod**: as, **non quo furtum facere stūduērit**, *not that he desired to commit a theft.* — Ter. Eun. 28.

II. Relatives implying a cause or reason take the subjunctive, being frequently strengthened by **ut**, **utpōte**, **quippe**, or **praesertim**: as,

fāteor mē errasse, qui hoc māluērim, *I confess that I erred in choosing this.* — Cic. Rosc. Am. 49.

quippe qui ne in oppidum quidem nūl perrāro vēniret, *no doubt, for he hardly ever came to town at all.* — Id. 18.

praesertim quod tuā negligentia factum arbitramur, *particularly as we think it happened by your neglect.* — Id. Flacc. 17.

III. **Cum** causal, signifying *since*, takes the subjunctive: as, **cum omnis pōpuli Rōmāni religiō in sacra et in auspicia divisa sit**, *since the whole religion of the Roman people is divided into ceremonies and auspices.* — Cic. N.D. III. 2.

But in the sense of **quod**, *on the ground that*, it takes the indicative: as,

grātūlor tibi cum tantum vāles apūd Dolabellam, *I congratulate you on your influence with Dolabella.* — Cic. Fam. IX. 14.

64. PURPOSE.

I. Final Clauses, or those expressing a Purpose, take the subjunctive after relatives (*quī=ut is*), or the conjunction *ut* (*ūtī*), *in order that*, and (negatively) *ne, ut ne, lest*: as,

mōnet ut ignes in castris fieri prōhibeat, ne qua ejus adventūs prōcul significatio fiat, *he advises him to prohibit fires being made in camp, in order that no signs of his arrival may be shown at a distance.* — Cæs. B.G. VI. 29.
ut ne sit impūne, *that it be not with impunity.* — Cic. Mil. 12.

II. *Quo* is used for *ut eo*, especially with comparatives: as,
castris ad Bābylōniam pōsitis quo majore ānimo cāpessērent bellum, *the camp being pitched near Babylon, in order that they might enter into the war with greater spirit.* — Curt. III. 2, 2.

NOTE. — Compare *quōmīnus*, (= *ut eo minus*), after verbs of hindering. — § 65, III.

III. After expressions denoting fear, *ut* (*ne non*) is to be translated *that not*; *ne*, *that* or *lest*: as,

omnes lābōres te excipere vīdeo; timeo ut sustineas, *I see you taking upon yourself all labors; I fear you will not endure them.* — Cic. Fam. XIV. 2.

pāvor cēperat milītes, ne mortiferum esset vulnus, *fear had seized the soldiers that the wound [of Scipio] was mortal.* — Liv. XXIV. 42.

IV. *Ut* or *ne* is often omitted, especially after verbs of wishing, advising, &c.; as,

Syro ignoscas vōlo, *I wish that you would pardon Syrus.* — Ter. Heaut. V. 5, 22.

cāve ignoscas, *do not pardon.* — Cic. Lig. 5.

NOTE. — For *ut*, signifying *although*, see § 61, 2. In the sense of *when, as, how*, it takes the indicative: as, *ut vālet?* *how is she?* Pl. Trin; *ut vīdī*, *when I saw.* — Virg. Buc. VIII. 41.

V. The purpose of an action is expressed in Latin in various ways; but never (except rarely in poetry) by the simple infinitive, as in English. The sentence, *he sent men to plough the field*, may be rendered, —

1. By the subjunctive with **ut**: **as**,
hōmīnes misit ut agrum ārarent.
2. By the subjunctive with **qui**: **as**,
homines misit qui agrum ararent.
3. By the Gerund or Gerundive with **ad**: **as**,
homines misit ad agrum arandum. (§ 73, iv.)
4. By the Gerundive with **causā** or **gratiā**: **as**,
homines misit agri arandi causā. (§ 73, iii.)
5. By the Future Participle: **as**,
homines misit agrum aratūros. (§ 25, i.)

Purpose is also expressed by the Former Supine in many verbs: **as**, **spectātum lūdōs ivit**, *he went to see the games.* (§ 74.)

65. CONSEQUENCE OR RESULT.

I. Clauses denoting a Result take the subjunctive after relatives and the conjunction **ut** (negative, **ut non**): **as**,

**Augusto prompta ac prōfluens quaeque dēcēret princīpem
ēlōquentia fuit**, *Augustus possessed a ready and fluent
power of speaking, such as became a prince.* — Tac. Ann.
XIII. 3.

**Quae fuit eōrum tanta inīquitas ut plācārī pōpulo Rōmāno
non possent nisi vīri tāles occīdissent?** *How great
was their injustice [that of the gods] that they could not be
reconciled to the Roman people unless men of such eminence
should fall?* — Cic. N.D. III. 6.

II. **Quin**, *that not*, is used after negative expressions, denoting hinderance, resistance, doubt, and suspension of effort: **as**,

est dēterrīta numquam quin flēret, *she was never prevented
from weeping.* — Tib. I. 3, 13.

non dubīto quin hanc sālūtem antēpōnas illi victōriae, *I do
not doubt that you value this security more highly than that
victory.* — Cic. Lig. 10.

Many of these expressions may also be followed by the infinitive, or by **ne** with the subjunctive: **as**,

prōhibentur ādīre ad filios [also **ne adeant**], *they are forbid-
den to visit their own sons.* — Cic. Verr. V. 45.

III. *Quōmīnus*, *that not*, may be used after verbs of hindering: as,

nec aetas impēdit, quōmīnus agri cōlendi stūdia tēneāmus,
nor does the time of life prevent us from retaining the taste
for tilling the ground. — Cic. de Senect. 17.

IV. The subjunctive stands in relative clauses —

1. After *dignus*, *worthy*; *indignus*, *unworthy*; *aptus*,
idōneus, *fit*; *ūnus* and *sōlus*, *only*: as,

idonea mihi Laeli persōna visa est, quae dē amicitia dis-
cēreret, the person of Laelius seemed to me a suitable one
to discourse of friendship. — Cic. de Amic. I.

nil admirārī prōpe rēs est unā sōlāque, quae possit facere
et servāre beātum, to be surprised at nothing is almost
the sole and only thing which can make and keep one hap-
py. — Hor. Ep. I. 6, 1.

2. After general expressions denoting existence and non-existence: as,

erant qui Helvidium mīserārentur, there were some who pitied
Helvidius. — Tac. Ann. XVI. 29.

nihil est illōrum, quin [=quod non] ego illi dixērim, there is
none of these things which I have not said to him. — Plaut.
Bacc. III. 9, 89.

undē agger cōportārī posset, nihil erat rēliquum, there were
no materials left from which a mound could be got together.
— Cæs. B.C. II. 15.

3. After *quam*, *than*: as,

maiores arbores caedēbant, quam quas ferre miles posset,
they cut larger trees than a soldier could carry. — Liv.
XXXIII. 5.

66. INTERMEDIATE CLAUSES.

I. A Relative, or other subordinate clause, takes the Subjunctive, when it is regarded as an integral part of the thought or expression of some other person than the speaker or writer.

Many such clauses may be so regarded or not, as the writer chooses : as,

primam pōsuit eam de qua mōdo dixi, quae orta esset ex praesensione rerum futurarum, *he first mentioned that of which I have just spoken [direct statement] which (according to him) had its origin in the fore-feeling of the Future.* — Cic. N.D. II. 5. (See § 63, 1.)

II. A clause depending on a verb in the subjunctive will also be in the subjunctive, if regarded as an integral part of the sentence on which it depends : as,

qui a scribendi consuetūdine ad dicendum vēnit, hanc adfert facultatem, ut etiam subito si dicat, tamen illa quae dicantur similia scriptorum esse videantur, *he who passes from the practice of writing to speaking, brings with him this power, that even if he speak without preparation, yet what he says seems like written words.* — Cic. de Orat. I. 33. [*etiam subito si dicit, tamen illa quae dicuntur similia scriptorum esse videntur.*]

III. Intermediate Clauses in the **oratio obliqua** take the Subjunctive. (See the following section.)

67. ORATIO OBLIQUA.

If a quotation is made in the words of the original speaker, it is called **Oratio Recta** (*direct discourse*). But if it is made to depend on some verb of speaking or thinking, varying the form of the words from that originally used, it is called **Oratio Obliqua** (*indirect discourse*).

In English, an indirect quotation is introduced by the conjunction *that*.

I. The Latin form for quotations is as follows : —

1. In Indirect Questions the subjunctive is used : as,

quid sit futurum cras fuge quaerere, *avoid inquiring what will be to-morrow.* [direct question, **quid est futurum cras ?**]
Hor. Carm. I. 9, 13.

nec quibus rationibus superare possent, sed quemadmodum uti victoriā debērent cogitabant, *nor did they (the army of Pompey) reflect by what means they could win the victory, but in what manner they should use it.* — Cæs. B.C. III. 83.

Thus *quid quaeris* ? (direct question) means, *what do you ask* ? *scio quid quaeras* (indirect question) means, *I know what you ask* ; *scio quod quaeris* (direct assertion) means, *I know the thing you ask.* The indic. is rarely used for indir. questions.

NOTE. — *Nescio quis*, *I know not who*, is sometimes used (generally in the way of disparagement), to introduce a direct assertion ; being nearly equivalent to *aliquis* or *quidam*, *some one*, and may take the indicative : as,

quin etiam fuit audiendus Licinius nescio qui, *then too you had to listen to one Licinius.* — Cic. Mil. 24.

Nescio an, *I know not whether*, is often used as equivalent to *perhaps*, and regularly takes the subjunctive.

2. A Declarative sentence, when quoted, takes the construction of the accusative with the infinitive, the subject being put in the accusative, and the verb in the appropriate tense of the infinitive : as,

Crassus valet, *Crassus is well* ; *dicit Crassum valere*, *he says that Crassus is well.*

scripsit epistolam, *he has written a letter* ; *dicit se scripsisse epistolam*, *he says he has written a letter.*

non laetor, *I am not glad* ; *nego me laetari*, *I say I am not glad.*
mihi videor satis et esse deos et quales essent ostendisse.
I think I have shown clearly enough, both that there are gods, and of what nature they are. — Cic. N.D. II. 28. (§ 57, v.)

Esse here expresses an indirect statement ; *essent*, an indirect question.

The principal clause of a Conditional Sentence (apodosis) when indicative in the Oratio Recta, follows in the Oratio Obliqua the general rule for Declarative sentences ; but when subjunctive, it is represented by the future participle with *esse* if present or imperfect, or *fuisse* if pluperfect : as,

nisi iurasset scelus se facturum arbitrābatur [*scelus faceret*],
he thought he would incur guilt unless he should take the oath. — Cic. Verr. I. 47.

jūrant itā Cicerōnem locūtūrum fuisse [locūtus esset], *they swear that Cicero would have spoken so.* — Quint. X. 2, 17.

NOTE. — The subjunctive is not used as a principal verb, except in the apodosis of a conditional sentence (See § 60).

The subject of the Infinitive is sometimes omitted, when it would be easily understood: as,

rōgāvi pervēnissentne Agrigentum; dixit pervēnisse [sc. ea], *I asked whether they (the curtains) had reached Agrigentum; he answered that they had.* — Cic. Verr. IV. 12.

II. Subordinate clauses in the *oratio obliqua* take the subjunctive, the tense being determined by that of the principal verb (see § 57 also, § 66. I.): as,

L. Lentulus consul sēnātui rei quē publicae se non dēfūtūrum pollicētur, si audacter ac fortiter sententiās dicere vēlint, *Lucius Lentulus the consul promises not to desert the Senate and the republic, if they are willing to speak their minds boldly and bravely* [non deōro . . . si vōlētis]. — Cæs. B.C. I. 1.

Ariovistus respondit: si quid ipsi a Caesāre ōpus esset, sese ad eum venturum fuisse; . . . sibi autem mirum vīdēri, quid in suā Galliā, quam bello viciisset, aut Caesāri aut omnino pōpulo Rōmāno nēgōti esset, *Ariovistus answered, that, if he wanted any thing of Caesar, he would have come to him; . . . but that he wondered what concern either Caesar or the Roman people at all had with his Gaul, which he had conquered in war* [si quid ōpus esset . . . vēnisset; . . . mirum vīdētur, quid in mea Galliā, quam bello vici, . . . Caesāri . . . nēgōti sit]. — Cæs. B.G. I. 34.

But the indicative frequently stands in a clause of this character, where it states an independent fact, and is not a part of the general assertion: as,

quis neget haec omnia quae videmus deorum potestate administrari? *who can deny that all these things we see are ruled by the power of the gods?* — Cic. Cat. III. 9.

1. An Imperative in the *Oratio Recta* becomes a subjunctive in the *Oratio Obliqua*: as,

nē committēret, *let him not bring it about* [ne commiseris]. — Cæs. B.G. I. 13.

2. A Question is put in the infinitive, unless in the second person, in which case it becomes subjunctive: as,

si vêtêris contuméliæ oblivisci vellet, num etiam récentium injûriarum mêmoriâ [se] depônere posse? *if he were willing to forget the ancient disgrace, could he also lay aside the memory of recent outrages?* [num possim?] — Cæs. B.G. I. 14.

quid sibi vellent? *what did they wish?* [quid vultis?] — Id. 44.

III. 1. A future infinitive is often expressed by **fôrê (fûtûrum esse)** ut with the subjunctive; regularly so in verbs without supine stem: as,

rêbantur enim fôre ut exercitus impêrâtorem persêquêretur, *for they thought that the army would follow the general.* — Cic. N.D. III. 6.

nisi nuntii de Cæsâris victoriâ essent adlati, existimabant plerique futurum fuisse uti amittêretur, *unless news of Cæsar's victory had been brought, most thought he would have been lost.* — Cæs. B.C. III. 101.

2. After verbs signifying *hope, promise*, and the like, the subject of the infinitive, whether a noun or a personal or reflective pronoun, must always be expressed: as,

promisit se venturum, *he promised to come.*

spêrat se nêgôtium confecturum, *he hopes to finish the business.*

But where there is no future participle, **fôrê ut** with the subjunctive must be used: as,

sperat fôrê ut possit, *he hopes to be able.*

pollicêtur fôrê ut frumentum adfêratur, *he promises that corn shall be brought* (more rarely, *adlatum iri* or *fore*).

IV. 1. The passive of verbs of saying, &c., may either be used impersonally, followed by the accusative with the infinitive; or personally, followed by the infinitive alone: as,

primi trāduntur arte quâdam verba vinxisse, *they are related to have been the first to combine words by a certain art* [also, *traditur eos primos, etc.*] — Cic. Orat. 13.

2. The infinitive passive may be used impersonally after these verbs : as,

in eo ipso in quō praedicātiōnem nobilitātemque despiciunt, praedicārī de se ac nominārī vōlunt, *in that very work, in which they disparage renown and celebrity, they desire that they may be renowned and named.* — Cic. Arch. 10.

V. After a comparison, in the Oratio Obliqua, the construction of the accusative with the infinitive is usually continued : as,

nullam cāpitālīorem pestem quam vōluptātem corpōris hōmīnibus dicēbat ā nātūrā dātā [not quam vōluptas], *he said that no more deadly evil had been given to men by nature than bodily pleasure.* — Cic. de Senect. 12.

68. WISHES AND COMMANDS.

I. The subjunctive (often strengthened by the particles **ut, utīnam, o si**) is used in wishes ; the primary tenses in reference to future time ; the secondary to express a hopeless wish, the imperfect in present time, the pluperfect in past : as,

sērus in caelum rēdeas, *mayst thou return late to the skies.* — Hor. Carm. I. 2, 45.

utīnam me mortuum vidisses, *would that you had seen me dead.* — Cic. ad Q. Fr. I. 3, 1.

The primary tenses of the subjunctive so used are often equivalent to an imperative (see § 58, III.) : as,

ne semper ūdum Tībur et Aesūlae dēclīve contemplēris arvum, *do not for ever gaze at watery Tībur and the sloping fields of Aesula.* — Hor. Carm. III. 29, 6.

II. With verbs of wishing and permitting the infinitive is generally used : as,

te tuā frui virtūte cūpimus, *we wish you to reap the benefit of your virtue.* — Cic. Brut. 97.

neu sīnas Mēdos ēquītāre inultos, *nor permit the Medes to make incursions with impunity.* — Hor. Carm. I. 2, 51.

But the subjunctive may be used without **ut** : as,

vellem mos esset, *I would it were the custom.* — Ter. Ad. IV. 1, 16. (§ 64, IV.)

III. *Jūbeo*, *command*, and *vēto*, *forbid*, take the accusative and the infinitive; other verbs of commanding, the dative with *ut* and the subjunctive: as,

omnem sēnātum ad se convēnīre jussit, *he commanded the entire senate to come to him.* — Cæs. B.G. II. 5.

suis impērāvit ne quod omnīno tēlum in hostes reicērent, *he ordered his soldiers to hurl back no weapon at all against the enemy.* — Id. I. 46. (But *impēro hoc fieri*.)

69. SUBJUNCTIVE IN RELATIVE CLAUSES.

The various relative clauses have been already treated of, under the special heads to which they belong. They may be classed under the following titles: —

1. General relatives in *protasis*, §§ 59, 60, 61.
2. Temporal clauses (relative adverbs of time), § 62, IV.
3. Relative implying a Cause, § 63, II.
4. Relative of Purpose, § 64, I.
5. Relative of Consequence or Result, § 65, I. & IV.
6. Relative in Intermediate Clauses, § 66.
7. Relative clauses in *oratio obliqua*, § 67.

NOTE. — In general, the relative with a definite antecedent takes the indicative in direct construction; with an indefinite antecedent, the subjunctive: as,

hi sunt qui itā pŕtant, *these are they that think so.*

sunt qui ita putent, *there are some who think so.* (§ 65, IV. 2.)

70. SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES.

A Substantive Clause is a clause or phrase — usually the indicative with *quod*, the subjunctive with *ut*, or the accusative with the infinitive — which is construed like a noun, as the subject or object of a leading verb, or in apposition with the subject or object.

The subordinate verb in a substantive clause is usually in the subjunctive, as in § 66. For examples, see §§ 64, 65, 67, 68; also the following: —

I. Verbs implying motive or desire generally take *ut* (*nē*) with the subjunctive (see §§ 64, 65, 68): as,

concedo tibi ut ea praeterias, I allow you to pass over these points. — Cic. Rosc. Am. 19.

When verbs of this class are used for a mere expression of opinion, they take the accusative with the infinitive: as,

concedo non esse miseros qui mortui sint, I grant that those who are dead are not miserable. — Cic. Tusc. I. 7.

II. Impersonal verbs and other expressions denoting happening and existence, take a subjunctive introduced by *ut* (*ut non*), as subject (see § 65): as,

sequitur ut cujusque generis nota quaeratur, it follows that the mark of each class should be sought. — Cic. Orat. 23.

accidit ut esset plena luna, it chanced to be full moon. — Cæs. B.G. IV. 29.

accidit ut conturber, another point is that I am disturbed. — Cic. Deiot. 1.

mos est hominum ut nolint eundem pluribus rebus excellere, it is the custom of men to be unwilling to admit that the same person excels in several respects. — Id. Brut. 21.

III. Verbs of satisfaction and wonder, and impersonal expressions denoting fitness, take the accusative with the infinitive: as,

quae perfecta esse gaudeo, vehementerque laetor, I rejoice and greatly exult that these things have been accomplished. — Cic. Rosc. Am. 47.

accusatores multos esse in civitate utile est, it is advantageous that there be many accusers in a state. — Id. 20.

IV. *Quod* with the indicative is used to indicate the existence of a state of things, and at the same time express a judgment (compare § 63, 1.): as,

gaudeo quod te interpellavi, I rejoice that I interrupted you. — Cic. Legg. III. 1.

noli putare pigritiam me facere, quod non mea manu scribo, do not think that it is through indolence that I do not write with my own hand. — Id. Att. XVI. 15.

71. QUESTIONS.

Questions are introduced by interrogative Pronouns or Adverbs, or by the interrogative Particles **num**, **utrum**, **an**, and the Enclitic **-ne**.

An Enclitic is a particle joined in spelling to the preceding word, but retaining its independent meaning.

I. The enclitic **-ne** is used in questions asked for information merely; **nonne** when the answer *yes*, and **num** when the answer *no*, is expected; but in indirect questions **num** loses its peculiar meaning: as,

mēmīnistiane? *do you remember?* — Cic. Ros. Am. 28.

nonne his vestigiis ad cāput mālēficii pervēniri sōlet? *is it not customary to come by these traces to the source of a crime?* — Id. 27.

num dūbium est? *is there any doubt?* — Id. 37.

The interrogative particle is often omitted: as,

pātēre tua consilia non sentis? *do you not perceive that your plans lie open?* — Cic. Cat. I. 1.

II. In double questions, **utrum** or **-ne** stands in the first member, **an** (**annon**, **necne**), in the second: as,

utrum has corpōris an Pythāgōrae tibi mālis vīres ingēnii dāri? *would you rather this strength of body should be given you, or the strength of intellect of Pythagoras?* — Cic. de Senect. 10.

quaero servosne an libēros, *I ask whether slaves or free.* — Id. Rosc. Am. 27.

The interrogative particle is often omitted in the first member, when **-ne** may stand in the second: as,

sunt haec tua verba necne? *are these your words or not?* — Cic. Tusc. III. 18.

Sometimes the first member is omitted, and **an** alone asks a question with indignation or surprise: as,

an tu misēros pūtas illos? *do you think that those men are miserable?* — Cic. Tusc. I. 7.

For Indirect Questions, see §§ 24, II., 67, I. 1.

72. PARTICIPLES.

The time of participles, like that of infinitives, is relative to that of the verbs upon which they depend.

1. Participles are often used where the English idiom would require a separate clause: as,

venienti in Ligures Hannibali duo quaestores Romani traduntur, as *Hannibal is entering among the Ligurians, two Roman quaestors are given into his hands.* — Liv. XXI. 59.
instructos ordines in locum aequum deducit, he draws up the lines, and leads them into a favorable place. — Sall. Cat. 59.

See examples in § 25, page 27.

2. Sometimes a perfect participle agreeing with a noun is used when the action rather than the thing is to be made prominent: as,

ab urbe condita, from the founding of the city. — Liv. (title).

3. As there is no perfect active participle in Latin, the perfect passive, used absolutely with the noun which would have been the object, is used to express active relations: as,

his in his consiliis oppida muniunt, having formed these plans, they fortify their towns. — Cæs. B.G. III. 9.

See, respecting the Ablative Absolute, § 54, x.

73. GERUND AND GERUNDIVE.

The Gerund governs the same case as the verb; in grammatical construction it follows the same rules with nouns. But where the gerund would have an object in the accusative, the gerundive is regularly used instead, agreeing with the noun, and in the case which the gerund would have had: as,

paratiores ad omnia pericula subeunda, better prepared to meet all dangers. — Cæs. B.G. I. 5.

Subeunda agrees with *pericula*, which is governed by *ad*; the construction with the gerund would be *ad subeundum omnia pericula*, *ad* governing the gerund, and the gerund governing the accusative *pericula*.

I. The nominative of the gerund or gerundive is construed with the dative of persons, implying obligation or duty: as, *pugnandum est nobis*, *we must fight*, — i.e. *fighting is our business*, or *it belongs to us to fight* (compare § 51, VI., VIII.). *Caesāri omnia ūno tempore erant agenda*, *Cæsar had everything to do at once*. — Cæs. B.G. II. 20. *jūvēni pārandum sēni ūtendum est*, *it is for the young to get, for the old to enjoy*. — Sen. Ep. 36.

The Infinitive is also used as a verbal noun, like the Gerund, taking the Genitive, or the neuter of the Possessive, to express possession or duty (§ 50, I. 1.), while the Gerund takes the Dative: as, *sāpientis est parcius bibere*; or, *sāpienti est parcius bibendum*, *it is for a wise man to drink rather sparingly*.

Where the use of the dative as agent would be ambiguous — as in verbs governing the dative — a different construction must be used: thus,

ei parcendum est means either *he must spare* or *he must be spared*; but *ei parcendum est a nobis*.

NOTE. — This is the adjective meaning of the Gerundive in all the cases.

II. The genitive is construed as an objective genitive (§ 50, III.), following nouns and adjectives: as, *nēque consilii habendi nēque arma capiendi spatio dāto*, *time being given neither for forming plans nor for taking arms*. — Cæs. B.G. IV. 14.

It is used especially before *causā* or *gratiā* to express the purpose of an action: as,

dissimulandi causā aut sui expurgandi, *for the sake of dissimbling or of excusing himself*. — Sall. Cat. 31.

Or even alone with the same signification: as,

cognoscendae antiquitatis, *to study old times*. — Tac. Ann. II. 59.

The gerund is sometimes used with the genitive of an object not agreeing with it in gender or number: as,

sui liberandi facultas, *the opportunity of getting themselves clear*. — Cæs. B.G. IV. 34.

ego ejus videndi cupidus, *rectā consequor*, *eager to see her, I follow straight*. — Ter. Hec. III. 3, 12.

III. The dative follows words expressing purpose or fitness : as,

cōmītia cōsūlibus creandis, comitia for appointing consuls. —

Liv. XXXV. 24. (Gerund, *cōsūles creando.*)

te sōciam stūdeo scribendis versibus esse, I desire that thou [Venus] be my partner in writing verses. — Lucr. I. 25.

It is used especially to designate the functions of magistrates : as,

decemvīri stlītibus [litibus] jūdīcandis, the Board of ten for determining lawsuits.

IV. The accusative follows the prepositions *ad*, *inter*, and *ob* (occasionally *antē*, *circā*, *in*) : as,

me vōcas ad scribendum, you invite me to write. — Cic. Orat. 10.
nactus adītus ad ea cōnanda, having found means to undertake these things. — Cæs. B.C. I. 31.

V. The ablative is used after the prepositions *ab*, *de*, *ex*, and *in* ; or to express manner or means : as,

in quaerendis suis, in seeking his own comrades. — Cæs. B.G.

II. 21 (Gerund, *in quaerendo suos*).

multa pollicendo persuādet, he persuades by large promises. — Sall. Jug. 46.

74. SUPINE.

I. The Former Supine (in *um*) follows verbs of motion to express the purpose of the motion (compare § 55, III. 2) : as,

quid est, Crassē, inquit Jūlius, imusne sessum ? etsi admōnītum vēnīmus te non flāgītātum, what now, Crassus, said Julius, shall we take our seats ? although we have come to remind, not to entreat you. — Cic. de Orat. III. 5.

II. The Latter Supine (in *u*) is found only in a few verbs, especially those which express telling, hearing, and the like. It has a passive sense, and follows certain adjectives which describe the character of the action : as,

difficile est dictu, it is hard to say [in the telling]. — Cic. de Lege Manil. 22.

Table 17.

RULES OF SYNTAX.—I

1. **NOUNS** meaning the same thing agree in Case (APPPOSITION).
2. **ADJECTIVES** agree with Nouns in Gender, Number, and Case. Possessive Adjectives stand for the genitive of Pronouns, and in any case may have a Genitive in apposition (§ 46, 3).
3. **RELATIVES** agree with their Antecedents in Gender, Number, and Person.
4. A **VERB** agrees with its Subject in Number and Person. Two or more Singular Subjects — also Collective Nouns, with *quisque* and *uterque* — take a plural verb (§ 49, i.).
5. One Noun governs another in the GENITIVE signifying Origin or Possession (§ 50, i.; iii., 1), and (with Adjectives) Quality.
6. Words meaning a Part are followed by the Genitive of the word denoting the Whole (§ 50, ii). These include several Adverbs, and neuter Adjectives or Pronouns: *as, satia, parum; multum, plus; quid, aliquid, &c.*
7. Certain Genitives of Quantity, as *magni, pluria*, and the like, are used to express indefinite Value (§ 54, ix., 1, 2).
8. Some words of Memory and Feeling, Fullness and Want, — also many Verbal Adjectives, and Participles used as Adjectives, govern the Genitive (50, iii., 1, 2, 3: iv., 1, 3). So the Verbs *miserere, miseresco*, and *satago*; the Impersonals *miseret, poenitet, pudet, taedet*, and *piget*; *refert* and *interest*; with *recordor, meminisse, reminiscor* and *obliscor*, which may also govern the Accusative (§ 50, iv., 1, rem.).
9. Verbs of Accusing and the like take the Genitive of the Charge or Penalty (§ 50, iv., 2).
10. The DATIVE is generally used for the Indirect Object, or for the Person whose interest is concerned. In particular, Words of Likeness, Fitness, and Nearness govern the Dative.
11. Verbs signifying to favor, help, command, obey, serve, resist, threaten, be angry, pardon, envy, and trust, govern the Dative. Of these are *adversor, credo, faveo, fido, impero, invideo, noceo, parco, pareo, placeo, servio, studeo, suadeo* (*persuadeo*); also, compounds of *satia, bene*, and *male*.
12. The verb *esse, to be*, with its compounds (except *posse* and *abesse*), governs the Dative in the sense of Possession, Nearness, Help, &c. (§ 51, vi., viii.).
13. Verbs compounded with *ad, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, prae, pro, re, sub, super*, govern the Dative (§ 51, v.).
14. Verbs of Comparing, Giving, Declaring, and Taking away, govern the Accusative and Dative (§ 51, ii.).
15. Words implying Purpose or End take a secondary object in the Dative (§ 51, vii.).

Table 18.

RULES OF SYNTAX. — II.

16. The ACCUSATIVE is the case of the Direct Object of a Transitive Verb (§ 52).

17. The Subject of the Infinitive Mood is in the Accusative.

18. Length of Time and extent of Space are put in the Accusative (§ 55, i, ii.).

19. Verbs of Asking and Teaching govern two Accusatives.

20. The ABLATIVE is used of Cause, Manner, Means, Instrument, Quality, Specification, and Price (§ 54).

21. The Voluntary Agent after a Passive Verb is in the Ablative with *a* or *ab*; but after the Gerundive, it is in the Dative.

22. Words denoting Separation, and Plenty or Want, — also *opus* and *usus*, signifying *need*, — govern the Ablative (§ 54, vi.).

23. Participles denoting Birth or Origin — as *natus*, *satus*, *ortus*, *editus*, and the like — govern the Ablative.

24. The Adjectives *dignus*, *indignus*, with the Verbals *contentus*, *fretus*, *praeditus*, &c. govern the Ablative (§ 54, iv.).

25. The Deponents *utor*, *fruor*, *fungor*, *potior*, *vescor*, and *dignor*, with many of their compounds, govern the Ablative.

26. The Comparative Degree is followed by the Ablative.

27. Degree of Difference or Distance is put in the Ablative.

28. Time *when* is put in the Ablative (§ 55, i.).

29. The Subject and Predicate of a subordinate clause are often put in apposition in the Ablative (ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE § 54, x.).

30. The name of the Place *where* is put in what is called the Locative Case: this is generally in form like the Genitive or Dative (§ 55, iii., 3).

31. The name of the Place *whither* is in the Accusative; of the Place *whence* in the Ablative. But with names of Countries, Prepositions are always used to express *where*, *whither*, or *whence*.

32. One Verb governs another in the INFINITIVE (§ 58, iv.).

The Infinitive, with Subject-Accusative, is especially used after verbs of Knowing, Thinking, Hearing, and Telling (§ 52, vi.).

33. The Infinitive is often used for the tenses of the Indicative in narration (HISTORICAL INFINITIVE § 49, iii.).

34. Conjunctions which simply connect sentences, or parts of sentences, are followed by the same Case or Mood as that which goes before.

35. Conjunctions — also Relatives — implying Purpose or Result, require the Subjunctive Mood (§§ 64, 65). Thus —

36. *Ut* (*that*), *ne*, *quo*, *quin*, *quominus*; also *quasi*, *velut*, *utinam*, *O si*; *licet*, *cum* (*since* or *though*), *dum* (*until*), and *dummodo*, are followed by the Subjunctive (§§ 62, 63, 64, 65).

For the government of PREPOSITIONS, see §§ 42, 56.

75. GENERAL RULES OF SYNTAX.

- I. A Noun used to describe another agrees with it in Case (APPOSITION). — § 46.
- II. Adjectives agree with Nouns in Gender, Number, and Case. — § 47.
- III. Relatives agree with their Antecedents in Gender, Number, and Person. — § 48.
- IV. A Verb agrees with its Subject Nominative in Number and Person. — § 49.
- V. The Genitive is used —
 1. (Subjective) to define or limit the meaning of a Noun. — § 50. I.
 2. (Partitive) to denote the Whole after words signifying a Part. — Id. II.
 3. (Objective) after Nouns, Adjectives, and Verbs, especially those implying mental action or emotion. — Id. III., IV.
- VI. The Dative is used —
 1. After words implying Advantage or Disadvantage. — § 51, I. III. IV.
 2. As the case of the Indirect Object. — Id. II.
 3. After many compounds of Prepositions. — Id. V. [VII.
 4. With *case*, to denote Possession or Purpose. — Id. VI.,
 5. With the Gerundive, &c., to denote the Agent. — Id. VIII.
- VII. The Accusative is the case —
 1. Of the Direct Object. — § 52, I.
 2. Of the Secondary Object after many verbs. — Id. III.
 3. As the subject of the Infinitive. — Id. VI.
- VIII. The Ablative is used —
 1. To express Cause, Means, and Specification. — § 54, I.
 2. With an Adjective, to express Manner or Quality. — Id. II.
 3. As the Object after certain Verbs and Adjectives, — Id. III, IV.
 4. After Comparatives. — Id. V.
 5. After words of Separation, Plenty, and Want. — Id. VI.
 6. Of Subject and Predicate, in Apposition (Ablative Absolute). — Id. X.

- IX. Time *when* takes the ablative; time *how long* and distance *how far* the accusative. — § 55, I., II.
 - X. Relations of Place are expressed without prepositions, in the names of Towns and small Islands. — Id. III.
 - XI. Twenty-six Prepositions govern the accusative; eleven the ablative. — § 56, I.
 - XII. The Agent, after the passive voice, is expressed by the ablative with *ab*. — Id. IV.
 - XIII. In Compound Sentences, a primary tense is followed by a primary, and a secondary tense by a secondary. — § 57.
 - XIV. The Indicative Mood is regularly employed for the leading verb, and the Subjunctive in dependent clauses. — § 58, I. II.
 - XV. The Infinitive may be used as the Subject or as the Object of the leading verb. — Id. IV.
 - XVI. The subject of the Infinitive is put in the Accusative. — § 52, VI.; § 67, I. 2.
 - XVII. Participles, Gerunds, and Supines govern the case of their own verbs; but in grammatical construction they follow the rules of nouns and adjectives. — §§ 72, 73, 74.
 - XVIII. Conjunctions connect similar Cases and Moods, § 43.
- For a summary of the uses of the Subjunctive, see § 58, II.

76. ARRANGEMENT.

The Arrangement of words in a Latin sentence is not arbitrary, but depends greatly on the skill of the writer to give emphasis, harmony, and clearness.

In general, the Subject stands first, and the Verb last, in the sentence or clause to which they belong. The Object commonly precedes pretty closely the verb which governs it. A relative clause often goes before that containing the antecedent, especially when any stress is laid upon it. "In all ordinary cases, the adjective follows the noun, the genitive its governing substantive, and the apposition the word which it qualifies."

The most emphatic words in a sentence are the first and the last; but emphasis is given by any unusual arrangement of the words.

Thus the usual order of words to express the phrase, *the workman built me a house*, would be : *artifex mihi dōmum aedificāvit*. But either *dōmum*, *aedificavit*, or *mihi* may be emphasized by being put first ; and *artifex*, by being put last.

If care is taken, in reading Latin aloud, — observing both emphasis and quantity as well as accent, — to bring out the sense and balance of the parts, it will be seen that great skill has been exercised in this particular by the classical writers.

Latin expresses the relation of words to each other by *inflection*, rather than by *position*, like modern languages. Hence its structure not only admits of great variety in the arrangement of words, but is especially favorable to that form of sentence which is called a Period. In a period, the sense is expressed by the sentence *as a whole*, and is held in suspense till the delivery of the last word, which usually expresses the main action or motive. A careful attention to examples quoted in the Syntax will show the flexibility and force that can be given to the language in this way.

An English sentence does not often admit this form of structure. It was imitated, sometimes with great skill and beauty, by many of the early writers of English prose ; but its effect is better seen in poetry, in such a passage as the following : —

“ High on a throne of royal state, which far
Outshone the wealth of Ormus and of Ind,
Or where the gorgeous East with richest hand
Showers on her kings barbaric pearl and gold,
Satan exalted sat.”

Paradise Lost, Book II. 1-5.

PART THIRD.

RULES OF VERSE. (PROSODY.)

77. RHYTHM.

The poetry of the ancients was not governed, like modern poetry, by accent and rhyme; but was measured, like music, by the length of the syllables, or vowel sounds. The measured flow of verse is called Rhythm.

Each syllable is considered as either long or short, — in quantity or length, not in quality or sound; a long syllable being reckoned in length equal to two short ones.

The quantity of radical or stem-syllables, as of short *a* in *pāter* or of long *a* in *māter*, can be learned only by observation or practice, unless determined by the general rules of quantity.

A radical vowel, when not made short or long under the general rules of quantity, is said to be determined by the Authority of the poets.

78. RULES OF QUANTITY.

NOTE. — The Rules of Quantity do not in all cases apply to numerous Greek words, especially proper names, which have been introduced by the Latin poets.

I. GENERAL RULES. (See § 3, p. 3.)

1. A vowel before another vowel is short.

EXAMPLES. *via, way; trāho, draw.*

EXCEPTIONS. In the genitive form *ius*, *i* is common, but has the accent: as in *null'us*, *ipsi'us*; but it is long in *alius* (*ali'us*).

In *fio* *i* is long, except when followed by *er*: as, *fiam*, *fiērem*.

In the fifth declension, *e* is long between two vowels: as in *diēi*; but after a consonant, as in *fidēi*, it is short.

In many Greek proper names the vowel in Latin represents a long vowel or diphthong, and is consequently long: as in *Thalia*.

2. A diphthong is long: as in *fœdus*, *cŭl*.

Exc. The preposition *prae* in composition before a vowel is generally short: as in *praeustis*. — *Æn.* VII. 524.

3. A vowel formed by contraction is long: as *i* in *nīl* for *nīhil*; *currūs* (gen.) for *currūs*.

4. A vowel before two consonants or a double consonant, also before the letter *j*, is long: as, *māgnus*, *great*; *rēx*, *king*; *pējor*, *worse*; *et ventis ocior*, *and swifter than winds*.

But a short vowel before a mute followed by *l* or *r* is common, — that is, it may be long in verse: as in *vōlūcris*, *bird*.

A short vowel, made long under this rule, is said to be long by Position; as *e* in *dōcētne*. In *dōcēsne*, the same vowel is long by the special rule (II. 3).

NOTE. — The above rules of Position do not apply to final vowels.

II. FINAL SYLLABLES.

1. Words of one syllable ending in a vowel are long: as, *mē*, *tū*, *hī*, *nē*.

The attached particles *-nē*, *-quē*, *-vē*, *-cē*, *-ptē*, and *rē-* (*rēd-*), are short; *sē-* is long: as, *sēcēdit exercitumquē rēducit*, *he withdraws, and leads back the army*.

2. Nouns of one syllable are long: as, *sōl*, *sun*; *ōs*, *mouth*; *bōs*, *ox*; *vīs*, *force*.

Exc. *mēl*, *honey*; *ōs*, *bone*; *vīr*, *man*; *cōr*, *heart*; *fēl*, *gall*.

3. Final *as*, *es*, *os*, are long: final *is*, *us*, *ys*, are short: as, *nēfās*, *wrong*; *rupēs*, *rock*; *hostīs*, *enemy*.

Exc. **as** is short in some Greek terminations: **as**, **lampădăa**, *torches*; and in **anas**, *duck*.

es is short in nouns of the third declension (lingual) increasing short: **as**, **hospes**, *guest* (exc. **ăbiēs**, **ăriēs**, **păriēs**, **pēs**); in the present of **esse**; and in the preposition **pēsēs**.

os is short in **compēs**, **impēs**, and some Greek endings.

is in plural cases is long: **as** in **bōnis**; also, in the 2d p. sin. pr. ind. active of the fourth conjugation: **as audīs**; and in **sīs**, **vīs**, **vēlis**, **mālis**, **nōlis**; **grātīs**, **fōris**; and sometimes in **-ris** (perf.).

us is long in the gen. sing. and in the plural of the fourth declension: **as acūs**, *needles*; also in nouns of the third declension which increase long: **as virtūs**.

4. Most final syllables ending in a consonant except **c** are short: **as**, **ăd**, **ăc**, **ăt**, **ămăt**, **ămătūr**.

Exc. **dōnēc** **făc**, **nēc**; **nōn**, **quīn**, **sīn**; **crăs**, **plūs**; **cūr**, **păr**.

5. Final **a** in words declined is short, except in the abl. sing. 1st decl.: **as**, **eă stellă**, *that star*; **cum eă stellă**, *with that star*.

In all other words it is long: **as**, **frustră**, *in vain*; **vōcă**, *call*.

Exc. **ită**, *so*; **quă**, *because*; **pută**, *suppose*; and, in late use. **trīgintă**, *thirty*, etc.

6. Final **e** is short, except in nouns of the fifth declension; in adverbs formed from adjectives of the first form; and in the imper. sing. 2d. conjugation: **as**, **năvē**, **dūcītē**, **vērē**, **mănē**, **fīdē**, **quārē** (**quă rē**), **hōdiē** (**hōc diē**), **mōnē**, **mōnētē**.

Exc. **fămē**; **bēnē**, **mălē**; **ferē**, **fermē**; also (rarely), **cavē**, **hăbē**, **tăcē**, **vălē**, **vīdē**; **infernē**, **supernē**.

7. Final **i** is long: **as**, **năvī**, **fīlī**, **audī**. But it is common in **mīhi**, **tībi**, **sībi**, **ībi**, **ūbi**; and short in **nīsī**, **quăsī**, **cūl**.

8. Final **o** is common; but long in datives and ablatives; also, usually, in verbs.

Exc. **mōdō**, **īlīcō**, **prōfectō**, **đummōdō**, **īmō**, **ēgō**, **đuō**, **oetō**.

9. Final **u** is long; final **y** is short.

III. PENULTIMATE SYLLABLES.

DEFINITION. — A Noun is said to Increase, when in any case it has more syllables than in the nominative singular, which is called the Theme.

Thus *stella* is said to increase *long* in the gen. pl., *stellārum*; and *corpus*, to increase *short* in the gen. sing., *corpōris*.

A Verb is said to increase, when in any part it adds more than one syllable to the root or stem.

Thus *vōco* is said to increase *long* in the second person plural, *vōcātis*; and *rēgo* to increase *short* in the second person plural, *rēgītis*.

The final syllable, added to the root or stem, is called the Termination: as in *stell-a*, *nāv-is*, *vōc-at*, *rēg-is*.

The syllable added before the termination is called the Increment: as, *ā* in *stellārum*, *ō* in *corpōris*.

In *itīnērībus*, *amāvērītis*, the syllables marked are called the first, second, and third Increments of the noun or verb.

In a few words, the root consists only of a consonant, or combination of consonants, from which the radical vowel has been dropped: as, *scīmus*, *sūmus* (*ūs*).

1. In the Increment of Nouns and Adjectives, *a* and *o* are generally long; *e*, *i*, *u*, *y*, are generally short: as, *aetātis*, *servōrum*, *hōnōris*, *ōpēris*, *carmīnis*, *murmūris*, *pecūdis*, *chlamydis*.

Exc. *ā* in *baccar* (*-āris*), *hēpar* (*-ātis*), *jūbar*, *lār*, *mās* (*māris*), *nectār*, *pār*, *sāl*, *vās* (*vādis*), *daps* (*dāpis*); *fax*, *anthrax*.

ō in neuters of third declension; also in *arbor* (*-ōris*), *inops* (*-ōpis*), *scrobs* (*scrōbis*); but *ōs*, *ōris*.

ē in the fifth declension; also in *haeres* (*-ēdis*), *lex* (*lēgis*), *lōcuples* (*-ētis*), *mercēs* (*-ēdis*), *plebs* (*plēbis*), *quīēs* (*-ētis*), *rex* (*rēgis*), *vēr* (*vēris*).

i in most nouns and adjectives in *ix*: as, *rādīcis*, *fēlicis* (exc. *filix*, *nix*, *strix*); also *dis* (*dītis*), *glis* (*glīris*), *lis* (*lītis*), *vis* (*vīres*), *Quīrites*, *Samnītes*.

ū in *lux* (*lūcis*), *frux* (*frūgis*); also in forms from nom. in *ūs*: as, *palūdis*, *tellūris*.

2. In the Increment of Verbs (see Tables of Inflection, pp. 34-37), the characteristic vowels are as follows:—

Of the first conjugation **ā**: as, **vōcāre, vōcātur.**

Of the second conjugation **ē**: as, **mōnēre, monētur.**

Of the third conjugation **ě, ĭ**: as, **rěgěre, regitur.**

Of the fourth conjugation **ī**: as, **audire, auditur.**

Exc. **do** and its compounds have **ă**: as, **dăre, circumdăbat.**

In other increments —

ā is always long: as, **moneāris, rēgāmus.**

ē is long in tense-endings: as, **regēbam, audiēbar.**

But it is short before **ram, rim, ro**; and in the personal endings **-bēris, -bēre**: as,

rexerat, rexerit, amābēris, mōnēbēre.

ī is long in forms after the analogy of the fourth conjugation: as, **pētīvi, lăcessitum.**

Also in **sīmus, sītis, vōlīmus**, and rarely in the terminations **-rimus** and **-ritis**; but short in the future of the first and second conjugations: as, **vōcābītis.**

ō is found only in imperatives, and is always long: as, **mōnītōte.**

ū is found only in the supine stem and its derivatives, and is always long: as in **sōlūtūrus**; except in **sūmus, fūtūrus, vōlūmus, nōlūmus, mālūmus.**

3. Perfects and Supines of two syllables have the stem-syllable long: as, **fūgi, vīdi, vīsum**, from **fūgio, vīdeo.**

Exc. **bīb- dēd- (do), fīd- (fīdo), scīd- (scīdo), stēt- (sto), stīt- (sisto), tūl- (fēro); cīt- (cieo), dāt- (do), ĭt- (eo), līt- (līno), quīt- (queo), rāt- (reor), rūt- (ruo), sāt- (sēro), sīt- (sīno), stāt- (sisto);** but **stāt-** from **sto**, as in **pro-stātum.**

4. The root or stem-syllable generally retains its quantity through all the forms derived from it; but when doubled by reduplication (see pp. 33, 39), the first syllable is short: as, **tūlit, attūlerat; vīdi, vidērit; cādo, cēcīdit; caedo, cēcīdit.**

Exc. **dīco (dīco-), dūco (dūco-), fīsus (fīd-);** and some increments of nouns: as, **lēgis (lēg-), vōcis (vōc-).**

5. The following terminations are preceded by a long vowel: —

I. -al, -ar: as, vectīgal, pulvīnar.

Exc. ānīmal, cāpītal, jūbar.

II. -brum, -crum, -trum: as, lāvācrum, dēlūbrum, vērā-trum.

III. -do, -ga, -go: as, formīdo, aurīga, īmāgo.

Exc. oādo, dividō, šdo, mōdo, sōlīdo, spādo, trēpīdo; cālīga, fūga, tōga, plāga; āgo, ēgo, tēgo, nēgo, rēgo.

IV. -le, -les, -lis: as, ancīle, mīles, crūdēlis, hostīlis.

Exc. māle; indōles, sūbōles; grācīlis, hūmīlis, sīmīlis, stērīlis; and verbal adjectives in īlis: as, āmābīlis, dōcīlis, fācīlis.

V. -ma, -men, -mentum: as, poēma, flūmen, jūmentum.

Exc. ānīma, lacrīma, victīma; tāmen, colūmen; with rēgīmen and the like from verb-stems.

VI. -mus, -nus, -rus, -sus, -tus: as, extrēmus, sūpīnus, octōni, sēvērus, fūmōsus, pērītus.

Exc. (a.) I before -mus: as, finītīmus, mārītīmus (except bimus, trīmus, quadrīmus, ōpīmus, mīmus, līmus); and in superlatives (except īmus, prīmus); dōmus, hūmus, nēmus, cālāmus, thālāmus.

(b.) I before -nus: as in crastīnus, fraxīnus and the like (except mātūtīnus, vespertīnus, rēpentīnus); āsīnus, cōmīnus, ēmīnus, dōmīnus, fācīnus, prōtīnus, termīnus, vātīcīnus; mānus, ōceānus, plātānus; gēnus; bōnus, ōnus, sōnus.

(c.) ē before -rus: as, mērus, hēdēra (except prōcērus, sincērus, sēvērus); also barbārus, chōrus, nīrus, pīrus; sātīra, amphōra, ancōra, lŷra, purpūra; fōrum, pārūm.

(d.) lātus, mētus, vētus, dīgītus, servītus, spīrītus; quōtus, tōtus; hābītus, and the like.

VII. -na, -ne, -nis: as, carīna, māne, inānia.

Exc. advēna, dōmīna, femīna, māchīna, mīna, gēna, pāgīna; bēne, eīne; cānis, cīnis, jūvēnia.

VIII. -re, -ris, -ta, -tis: as, *altāre, sālūtāris, mōnēta, im-mītis*.

Exc. *māre, hīlāris, rōta, nōta, sītis, pōtis*, and most nouns in -ita.

IX. -tim, -tum, and syllables beginning with v: as, *prīvā-tim, quercētum, ōlīva*.

Exc. *affātim, stātim; nīvis (nix); brēvis, grāvis, lēvis (light); nōvus, nōvem*; and several verb-roots: as, *jūvo, fāveo*.

X. -dex, -lex, -mex, -rex, -dix, -nix, and the numeral endings -ginti, -gintā: as, *jūdex, īlex*.

Exc. *cūlex, sīlex, rūmex*.

6. The following terminations are preceded by a short vowel:—

I. -cus, -dus, -lus: as, *rusticus, cālīdus, glādiōlus*.

Exc. *ōpācus, āmicus; apricus, ficus, mendicus, pūdicus; fidus, nīdus, sīdus*; and ū before -dus: as, *crūdus, nūdus*; ē before -lus, as *phāsēlus* (except *gēlus, scēlus*); *āsīlus; lūcus*.

II. -no, -nor, -ro, -ror, in verbs: as, *destīno, crimīnor, gēro, quēror*.

Exc. *festīno, prōpīno, sāgīno, ōpīnor, inclīno; dēclāro, spēro, spīro, ōro, dūro, mīror*.

III. -ba, -bo, -pa, -po: as, *fāba, bībo, lūpa, crēpo*.

Exc. *glēba, scriba; būbo, nūbo, scribo; pāpa, pūpa, rīpa, scōpa, stūpa; cāpo, rēpo, stīpo*.

IV. -tas (in nouns), -ter and -tus (in adverbs): as, *cīvī-tas, fortīter, penītus*.

The above rules and exceptions cover most Latin words in common use; omitting a few Greek forms, as *crātēr, cōma*.

79. FEET.

The most natural division of musical time is into intervals, consisting of either two or three equal parts. In music, this is called double or triple time.

These intervals are in music called Measures; in prosody, they are called Feet; and the parts are indicated by the number or length of the syllables of which the feet consist.

The feet most frequently employed in Latin poetry, with their musical notation, are the following : —

OF TWO SYLLABLES.

- | | | | | | |
|----|---------------|--|--|--|--|
| 1. | $\frac{2}{8}$ | | | | Pyrrhic : as, <i>lāpīs</i> . |
| 2. | $\frac{3}{8}$ | | | | Trochee (choree) : as, <i>cārūs</i> . |
| 3. | $\frac{3}{8}$ | | | | Iambus : as, <i>bōnōs</i> . |
| 4. | $\frac{2}{4}$ | | | | Spondee : as, <i>vēntōa</i> . |

OF THREE SYLLABLES.

- | | | | | | | | |
|-----|---------------|--|--|--|--|--|---|
| 5. | $\frac{2}{4}$ | | | | | | Dactyl : as, <i>āttūlīt</i> . |
| 6. | $\frac{2}{4}$ | | | | | | Anapaest : as, <i>dōmīnōa</i> . |
| 7. | $\frac{2}{4}$ | | | | | | Amphibrach : as, <i>vīdēntīa</i> . |
| 8. | $\frac{3}{8}$ | | | | | | Tribrach : as, <i>hōmīnīa</i> . |
| 9. | $\frac{3}{4}$ | | | | | | Molossus : as, <i>dūxērūnt</i> (rare). |
| 10. | | | | | | | Amphimācer (Cretic) : as, <i>ēgērānt</i> . |
| 11. | | | | | | | Bacchius : as, <i>rēgēbānt</i> . |

Feet of four syllables are combinations of those of two. The following only require special notice.

- | | | | | | | | | | |
|-----|---------------|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| 12. | $\frac{3}{4}$ | | | | | | | | Choriambus : as, <i>cōntūlērānt</i> . |
| 13. | $\frac{3}{4}$ | | | | | | | | Greater Ionic : as, <i>cōnjēcērāt</i> . |
| 14. | $\frac{3}{4}$ | | | | | | | | Lesser Ionic : as, <i>rētūlīssēnt</i> . |

The first, second, third, or fourth **Epitritus** has a short syllable in the first, second, third, or fourth place, with three long syllables.

The first, second, third, or fourth **Paeon** has a long syllable in the first, second, third, or fourth place, with three short syllables.

NOTE. — Narrative poetry was written for rhythmical recitation, or chant; and Lyrical poetry for rhythmical melody, or music. It is often to be accompanied by measured movements, or dance. But in reading, it is not usual to keep the strict measure of time; and often the accent is substituted for rhythm, as in prose.

The accented syllable of each foot is called the *Arsis* ; and the unaccented part, the *Thesis*.

Accent, in prosody, is called *Ictus*, — that is, the *beat* of the foot, as in dancing.

A rhetorical pause occurring within the limits of a verse is called *Cæsu'ra*.

The position in the verse of the principal *Cæsura* is important, as affecting the melody or rhythm. It usually falls in hexameter after the *Arsis*, or accented syllable, of the third or fourth foot in the verse. Any break in a foot is often called *Cæsura*.

NOTE. — In modern poetry, even in modern Greek, quantity is disregarded, and the names of ancient feet are applied to combinations of accented and unaccented syllables. Thus *fully* and *foolish* are both called Trochees, although the quantity of *fully* is ~ ~ ; so *impel* and *impale* are both called Iambs. It is difficult, therefore, to imitate well in modern verse those Latin metres which contain two or three long syllables in succession, because accents seldom come naturally on successive syllables.

Owing to this disregard of quantity by the modern ear, the easiest way for a modern reader to get a peculiar melody from Latin verse is to accent (in verse) *every* long syllable, and *no* short one. Thus as prose the second verse of “*Integer Vitæ*” would be accented thus : —

“ non éget Máuris jáculis néque árcu : ”

while in poetry it is to be accented thus : —

“ nón egét Máurís jaculís nequ' árcu,”

like the free rendering in English : —

“néedeth nót bów, spéar, nor a ráttling quíver.”

80. SCANNING.

A single line in poetry is called a *Verse*.

To divide the verse in reading into its appropriate feet, according to the rules of quantity and versification, is called *Scanning*, — that is, a climbing, or advance by steps.

A verse lacking a syllable at the beginning is called *Acephalous* ; lacking a syllable at the end it is called *Catalectic*.

NOTE. — It is recommended that the student should habitually *scan* every verse he meets in the course of his study. In reading or recitation, while the prose accent should be retained, the flow of the verse may be in some degree preserved by due attention to the rules of quantity. This is called *Metrical Reading*.

In scanning, a vowel or diphthong at the end of a word — sometimes even at the end of a verse — is dropped, when the next word begins with a vowel or with *h*. This is called *Synalcepha*, or *Elision*; or, at the end of a verse, *Synapheia*.

A final *m*, with the preceding vowel, is dropped in like manner. This is called *Ecthlipsis*.

Hence a final syllable in *m* is generally reckoned to have no quantity of its own; its vowel, in any case, being either elided or else made long by position.

Elision is sometimes omitted when the final syllable has a special emphasis, or is succeeded by a pause. This is called *Hiatus*.

A final syllable, regularly short, is sometimes lengthened before a pause. It is then said to be long by *Cæsura*.

The last syllable of any verse may be indifferently long or short.

81. METRE.

Metre is a regular combination of feet in verse, and is named from its most frequent or ruling foot, as *Dactylic*, *Iambic*, *Trochaic*, *Anapæstic*.

The ruling foot, so called, always consists of a combination of long and short syllables, and is therefore never a *pyrrhic* or *spondee*.

A *Verse* consists of a given number of feet arranged metrically. It is named from the number of feet it contains, as *Hexameter*, *Trimeter*.

A *Stanza* consists of a definite number of verses ranged in a fixed order. It is often called from the name of some favorite poet, as *Sapphic*, *Alcaic*, *Horatian*.

82. FORMS OF VERSE.

The most common forms of Latin verse are these : —

I. The Dactylic Hexameter, called also Heroic verse, used in narrative and pastoral poetry. It consists of six feet, of which the last is always a Spondee, the fifth generally a Dactyl, and the rest indifferently spondees or dactyls.

When the fifth foot is a spondee, the verse is called Spondaic.

The introductory verses of the *Æneid*, divided according to the foregoing rules, will be as follows, the principal Cæsura in each verse being marked by double lines : —

armă vī|rūmq̄ cā|nō || Trō|jæ quī | primūs āb | ōris
Itāl|ām fā|tō prōfū|gūs || Lā|vināquē | vēnīt
litōrā, | mūlt' ill' | ēt tēr|ris || jā|ctātūs ēt | āltō
vī sūpē|rūm sae|vae || mēmō|rēm Jū|nōnīs ōb | iram ;
mūltā quō|qu' ēt bēl|lō pās|sūs || dūm | cōndērēt | ūrbem,
infēr|rētquē dē|ōs Lātī|ō, || gēnūs | ūndē Lā|tinum
Albā|niquē pā|trēs, || āt|qu' āltæ | moenīā | Rōmæ.

The Hexameter verse has been illustrated in English thus : —

"Strongly it | bears us along, in | swelling and | limitless | billows,
Nothing be|fore and | nothing be|hind, but the | sky and the | ocean."

II. Dactylic Pentameter : consisting of five feet, and used alternately with the Hexameter, to form the Elegiac stanza. It is usually divided, in scanning, into two half verses, of which the latter always has two dactyls, and each ends in a single long syllable, or half-foot : as,

cūm sūbīt | illī|ūs trīs|tissimā | nōctīs ī|māgo
quā mīhī | sūprē|mūm || tēmpūs īn | ūrbē fū|īt,
cūm rēpē|tō nō|ctēm quā | tōt mīhī | cārā rē|liqui,
lābītūr | ēx ōcū|līs || nūnc quōquē | gūttā mē|īs.
jām prōpē | lūx ādē|rāt, quā | mō dis|cēdērē | Cæsār
finībūs | ēxtrē|mae || jūssērāt | Ausōnī|æ.

Ov. TRIST. I. EL. 3, 1-6.

The Elegiac Stanza has been illustrated thus : —

"In the hex|ameter | rises the | fountain's | silvery | column,
In the pent|ameter | still || falling in | melody | back."

III. Iambic Trimeter (senarius) : consisting of three measures, each containing a double Iambus. In the first half-measure a spondee or anapæst is often substituted for the iambus ; and other substitutions are occasionally used. This verse is used chiefly in dramatic dialogue.

In the following example, it alternates with the Iambic Dimeter, which consists of two similar double feet : —

bēātūs il|lē quī prōcūl | nēgōtīis,
 ūt prīscā gēns | mōrtālīum,
 pātērnā rū|rā būbūs ēx|ercēt sūis,
 sōlūtūs ō|mnī fēnore, . . .
 fōrūmqūē vī|tāt ēt sūpēr|bā cīvīum
 pōtēntīo|rūm līmīnā.

HOR. EPOD. II. 1-8.

IV. Alcaic Strophe, or Stanza : consisting of four verses. The first two verses (greater Alcaic) have for their base each five Iambuses, for the first and third of which a spondee is substituted, and for the fourth an anapæst ; the third verse is the same, but with one complete and one half iambus in the last two feet ; the fourth verse consists of two anapæsts and an iambus, preceded and followed by a single syllable, or half-foot : as,

jūst' āc | tēnā|cēm prō|pōsītī | vīrum
 nōn cī|vī ār|dōr prā|vā jūbēn|tīum
 nōn vūl|tūs in|stāntīs | tŷrān|nī
 mēn|tē quātīt | sōlīdā | nēqu' au|stēr.

Id. OD. III. 3, 1-4.

Or, the first verse may be divided into a spondee, bacchius, and two dactyls ; the second into a spondee, bacchius, and two trochees ; and the third into two dactyls and two trochees.

V. Sapphic Stanza : consisting of three Sapphic verses and one Adonic.

The base of the Sapphic verse is five Trochees, for the second of which a spondee, and for the third a dactyl, is substituted.

The Adonic verse consists simply of a dactyl and spondee (or Trochee): as,

jām sǎ|tīs tēr|rīs nīvīs | ātquē | dīrae
grāndī|nīs mī|sīt pātēr | ēt rū|bēntē
dēxtē|rā sǎ|crās jācū|lātūs | ārcēs
tērrū|t | ūrbem.

Id. Od. I. 2, 1-4.

Or, the Sapphic verse may be regarded as consisting of a Trochee, Spondee, Choriambus, and Bacchius.

VI. Lesser Asclepiadic: consisting of a spondee, two choriambus, and an iambus: as,

Maecē|nas ātāvīs | ēdītē rē|gībūs
O ēt | praesīdī ēt | dūlcē dēcūs | mēum.

Id. Od. I. 1, 1, 2.

VII. This verse is often joined with the Glyconic (the same as the above, omitting one choriambus), making the First Asclepiadic Stanza: as,

Rōmae | prīncīpīs ūr|bīum
dignā|tūr sūbōlēs | intēr āmā|bīlēs
vātūm | pōnērē mē | chōrōs;
ēt jām | dēntē mīnūs | mōrdēōr īn|vīdo.

Id. Od. IV. 3, 13-16.

VIII. Or, three Asclepiadics with one Glyconic, making the Second Asclepiadic Stanza: as,

audīs | quō strēpītu | jānūā quō | nēmūs
intēr | pūlchrā sātūm | tēctā rēmū|gīāt
vēntīs | ēt pōsītās | ūt glācīēt | nīvēs
pūrō | nūmīnē Jū|pītēr.

Id. Od. III. 10, 5-8.

IX. Or, two Asclepiadics are joined with one Pherecratic (the same with the Glyconic, lacking one syllable) and one Glyconic, making the Third Asclepiadic stanza: as,

hīc bēl|lūm lācrīmō|s' hīc mīserām | fāmēm
pēstēm|qu' ā pōpūl' ēt | prīncīpē Cae|sār' īn
Pērsās | ātquē Brītān|nōs
vēstrā | mōtūs āgēt | prēcē.

Id. Od. III. 21, 13-16.

The above forms include upwards of a hundred of the Odes of Horace. In the eighteen not included, he employs twelve different kinds of stanzas, most of which are combinations of the verses already given. They may be briefly indicated as follows : —

1. Choriambic Pentameter (Greater Asclepiadic) :

tū nō | quaeſtōrīs | ſcīrē nēfās | quēm mīhī quēm | tibi
(Od. I. 11, 18; IV. 10.)

2. Hexameter, followed by the last four feet of an hexameter. — (Od. I. 7, 28; Epod. 12.)

3. Hexameter, followed by Iambic Dimeter. — Epod. 14, 15.

4. Trimeter Iambic alone. — Epod. 17.

5. Choriambic Dimeter and Tetrameter : as,

Lŷdīā dīc | pēr ōmnes
tē dēōs ō|rō ſŷbārīn | cūr prōpērās | āmāndo. — Od. I. 8.

6. Hexameter, followed by Iambic Trimeter. — Epod. 16.

7. Verse of four Lesser Ionics. — Od. III. 12.

8. Hexameter with Dactylic Penthemim (five half-feet) :

dīfū|gērē nī|vēs rēdē|ūnt jām | grāmīnā | cāmpīs
ārbōrī|būzquē cō|mae. — Od. IV. 7.

9. Iambic Trimeter; Dactylic Penthemim; Iambic Dimeter. — Epod. 11.

10. Hexameter; Iambic Dimeter; Dactylic Penthemim. — Ep. 13.

11. Archilochian Heptameter; Iambic Trimeter catalectic : as,

sōlvītūr | ācrīs hī|ōms grā|tā vīcē | vērīs | ēt fā|vōnī
trāhūnt|quē ſīc|cās mā|chīnae | cārī|nae. — Od. I. 4.

12. Iambic Dimeter and Trimeter, each imperfect : as,

nōn | ēbūr | nēqu' au|rēum
mēā | rēnī|dēt īn | dēmō | lēcū|nar. — Od. II. 18.

In dramatic dialogue, the Trochaic Tetrameter catalectic, or Septenarius, is very often used, consisting regularly of fifteen syllables, — the same with the 8's and 7's of the common ballad measure, — usually with various irregularities : as,

ād t'advēnio spēm salūtem cōsili' aūxili' éxpētens.

TER. ANDR. II. 1, 18.

83. RECKONING OF TIME. (See § 56, I. 4.)

The year was dated, in earlier times, by the names of the consuls; but was afterwards reckoned from the building of the city, the date of which was assigned by Varro to B.C. 753. In order, therefore, to reduce Roman dates to those of the Christian era, *the year of the city is to be subtracted from 754; e.g. A.U.C. 708 = B.C. 46.*

The first day of each month was called **Kālendae**, from **cālāre**, to call; that being the day on which the priests publicly announced the new moon in the **Cōmītia Cālāta**, which they did, originally, after actual observation. Sixteen days before this, that is, on the fifteenth day of March, May, July, and October, but the thirteenth of the other months, came the **Idus**, or day of the full moon; eight days before the Ides were the **Nonae**. The month was thus divided into three weeks of eight days, and one of five or seven. The days were reckoned backward from these points; but as it was the custom of the Romans always to include the point of departure in such calculations, it is necessary, in order to find the day of the month, to take this into account. Thus, the day before the Kalends, Ides, &c., is called **Pridie Kalendas**, &c.; the day before this, **ante diem (a. d.) tertium Kalendas**, &c. Therefore, with the Kalends, *two must be added to the number of days of the preceding month*; with the Nones and Ides, *one must be added to the day of the month on which they occur*; and *the day of the date must be taken from the number thus obtained.* E. g. the sixth day before the Kalends of November: 31 (the number of days of October) $+ 2 = 33$; $33 - 6 = 27$. The date will be Oct. 27. — The third day before the Ides of March: $15 + 1 = 16$; $16 - 3 = 13$. March 13.

Allen's Classical Handbook, §§ 205, 208.

84. RECKONING OF MONEY. (See § 14.)

The money of the Romans was in early times wholly copper, the unit being the **As**. This was nominally a pound,

but actually somewhat less, in weight, and was divided into twelve *Unciae*. In the 3d cent. B.C. the *as* was reduced by degrees to one-twelfth of its original value. At the same time silver coins were introduced; the *Denarius* = 10 *asses*, and the *Sestertius*, or *Sesterce* (*semis tertius*, represented by *IIS*, or *HS*, = *duo et semis*) = $2\frac{1}{2}$ *asses*. The *sestertius*, being probably introduced at a time when it was equal in value to the original *as*, came to be used as the unit (hence *nummus* was used as equivalent to *sestertius*); afterwards, by the reductions in the standard, four *asses* became equal to a *sesterce*. Gold was introduced later, the *aureus* being equal to one hundred *sesterces*. — *Sestertium* (M.) = 1000 *sestertii* was used as an expression of value, not as a coin.

In the statement of sums of money in cipher, a line above the number indicated thousands; lines at the sides also, hundred-thousands. Thus *HS. DC.* = 600 *sestertii*. *HS. DC.* = 600,000 *sestertii*, or 600 *sestertia*. *HS. [DC]* = 60,000,000 *sestertii*. With the numeral adverb, hundred-thousands are also understood: as, *decies*, *decies HS.*, or *decies sestertium*, that is, *decies centena milia sestertium*, or ten times a hundred *sestertia* = 1,000,000 *sestertii*.

Id. §§ 198, 199.

85. ROMAN PRÆNOMENS,

WITH THEIR ABBREVIATIONS. (See § 15.)

A.	Aulus.	Mam.	Mamercus.
App.	Appius.	N.	Numerius.
C.	Caius.	P.	Publius.
Cn.	Cneius.	Q.	Quintus.
D.	Decimus.	Ser.	Servius.
K.	Kæso.	Sex.	Sextus.
L.	Lucius.	Sp.	Spurius.
M.	Marcus.	T.	Titus.
M'	Manius.	Tl.	Tiberius.

Id. § 212.

SUPPLEMENT.

NOTE.—The following pages are designed for the use of Teachers. The earlier ones, taken from “Latin Lessons,” may be found convenient in the exercises of the class-room; while those which follow, including the sections on Inflection and Classification, will aid in giving a view of the structure of the language, valuable to the teacher, and indirectly of service to the pupil.

1. *On the Method of Teaching Latin.*

I. PRELIMINARY INSTRUCTION.

THE pupil should learn thoroughly the introductory matter contained in the first seven sections of the Grammar, omitting the smaller type. If thought desirable, he may commit to memory all the illustrative examples, which should be carefully analyzed and explained by the teacher.

Thus, in the first example (§ 7), *pater meus adest*: the terminations *er*, *us* are nominative case-endings of the third and second declensions; the word *pater*, if pronounced with the Italian sound of the vowels, and a little thickening of the consonants, becomes the English *father*,—which was actually formed in this way, and is nearly the same word in Sanscrit, Greek, Latin, German, and English; the syllable *me* is the same as the English, and, with the adjective-ending, signifies *my*; *est* is *es*—(the same as the English *is*)—with *t* the sign of the third person; *ad* is the English *at*, meaning *to* or *near*; so that the whole sentence is, *my father is-at-hand*.

In the second example, *patris ejus amicus miseretur mei*: *is* and *jus* (*ius*) are genitive-endings of the third and second declensions; *amicus* has the same root as the English *amicable* (friendly); *miseretur* has the passive or reflective termination, *tur*, with the same root which is found in the English *mercy*, also in *miserable*; and in *mei* we have the word *me* with the genitive-ending; so that the sentence is, *his father's friend has-mercy on me*.

In the third example, *dedit mihi cultellum; magno mihi usui erat*: the doubled consonant in *dedit* (as in the English *did*)

is sign of the past tense, and means *gave*; *mihī* has the dative-ending *i* with the root *me* (*mi*); the Latin *coulter* is the English *coulter* (the cutting part of a plough), and means a cutting instrument — *cultellus* being the diminutive (*a little knife*), having here the accusative-ending *um*; *magno* and *usui* have the dative-ending of the second and fourth declensions, signifying the purpose or end (see § 51, VII.); and *erat* has, with the root *ēs*, or *ē*, the termination of the imperfect; so that the sentence is, *he gave me a little-knife: it was of great use to me.*

The teacher will illustrate in like manner the remaining examples. He may, however, at his discretion, defer this analysis till the review.

It will be the care of the teacher to make clear to the mind of the pupil those usages in Latin — such as the distinctions of gender, number, and case by inflection — which have little or nothing to correspond in English. The time that this will occupy will vary with the age and capacity of the scholars.

They should be taught also what the Latin language is, when it was spoken, by whom and where; they should be informed of the wealth of Latin literature, and the practical usefulness of the language in modern times. Their attention should further be drawn to the words in English which are derived from Latin (as in the cases analyzed above); and this may be illustrated from any other language known to the pupil. It is very desirable that, as new Latin words are introduced, the pupil should be taught to search for English words from the same root.

II. DEFINITIONS.

Nouns, Adjectives, Pronouns, Verbs, Adverbs, Prepositions, Conjunctions, and Interjections are called PARTS OF SPEECH. There is no Article in Latin.

A NOUN is the name of any thing: as, *hōmo*, *man*; *nāvis*, *ship*.

If a noun is the name of a person, or of a thing spoken of by its own name, as if it were a person, it is a Proper Noun; if not, it is

a Common Noun. Thus in the sentence *Roma magna est urbs*, *Rome is a vast city*, *Roma* is a proper, and *urbs* a common noun.

An ADJECTIVE is a word used to define a quality: as, *cārus*, *dear*; *bōnus*, *good*.

Comparison shows the degree of the quality: as,

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
<i>cārus</i> , <i>dear</i> .	<i>carior</i> , <i>dearer</i> .	<i>carissimus</i> , <i>dearest</i> .
<i>bōnus</i> , <i>good</i> .	<i>mēlior</i> , <i>better</i> .	<i>optimus</i> , <i>best</i> .

A PRONOUN is a word used instead of a noun: as, *he* for *the man*.

The First Person, *ēgō*, *I*, *nōs*, *we*, is the person speaking; the Second Person, *tū*, *vōs*, *you*, is the one spoken to; the Third Person, *he*, *she*, *it*, *they*, is that spoken of, and has no personal pronoun in Latin, Demonstratives being often used instead.

A Demonstrative denotes a particular person or thing: as, *hic*, *this*, *ille*, *that*.

A Relative refers to a person or thing before spoken of: as, *qui*, *who*, *quod*, *which*.

The person or thing referred to is called the Antecedent: as, *hōmo qui vēnit*, *the man who came*.

An Interrogative asks a question: as, *quis adest?* *who is here?* *tibīnam gentium sūmus?* *where in the world are we?*

A VERB is a word which tells an action or condition: as, *vēni*, *I came*, *cēcīdīt*, *he fell*.

Mood denotes the manner of an action: as, *vēni*, *I came* (Indicative); *vēni*, *come!* (Imperative).

Tense denotes the time of an action: as, *currit*, *he runs* (Present); *cūcurrit*, *he ran* (Past).

Of Voices, the Active speaks of a person doing the action: as, *fērit*, *he strikes*; the Passive, as suffering it: as, *fēritur*, *he is struck*.

A PARTICIPLE expresses the action, etc., of a verb in the form of an adjective: as, *fēriens*, *striking*; *ictus*, *struck*.

An ADVERB is a word which qualifies the meaning of adjectives or verbs: as, *ācerrīmē fērit*, *he strikes very hard*.

A **PREPOSITION** is a word which expresses the relations between other words: as, *in oppidum vēnit*, *he came to town*; *pro patriā mōri*, *to die for one's country*.

A **CONJUNCTION** is a word which connects other words or sentences: as, *prōcērus et vālidus*, *tall and strong*.

INTERJECTIONS are exclamations: as, *heus! Halloo!*

GENDER is distinction as to sex, and is Masculine of male creatures: as, *rex*, *king*; Feminine of female creatures: as, *rēgina*, *queen*; neuter of things: as, *sōlium*, *throne*.

Things without sex are Neuter in English: as, *stone*, *tree*. But in Latin they are frequently masculine or feminine: as, *lāpis*, *stone* (masc.); *arbor*, *tree* (fem.). This is called Grammatical Gender.

NUMBER signifies how many, and is Singular when one is spoken of: as, *vīr*, *man*; Plural when more than one: as, *vīri*, *men*.

CASE is the form a noun takes to show its relation to other words: as, *puēri currunt*, *the boys run* (Nominative); *puēri sōror*, *the boy's sister* (Genitive).

This relation is generally shown in English by prepositions: as, *gesta Romanorum*, *the deeds of the Romans*; *invidia mihi*, *envy against me*.

QUANTITY is the time taken in pronouncing a vowel or a syllable, in comparison with other syllables.

Thus in the word *strengthen*, the first syllable is long and the second short in quantity or time, though they are both called short in quality or sound; in *submit*, the first is long and the second short, in quantity, though the latter has the accent.

Quantity is reckoned much more important in Latin than in English, and often shows the difference in the meaning of words. Thus *lēvis* (long e) means *smooth*; *lēvis* (short e), means *light*; *ocēcidit* is *he fell*; *ocēcidit*, *he cut or felled*.

EMPHASIS is stress of voice on an important word or phrase: as, *cowards run*; but *brave men stand*.

ACCENT is stress of voice on a particular syllable: as, *the nécessary resérves*.

A **PROCLITIC** is a word without accent of its own, that seems to lean on the word after it ; an **ENCLITIC** is one that seems to lean on the word before it.

Thus in the sentence, *The boys, and girls too, are here*, — *the* is a proclitic, and *too* an enclitic.

In Latin, the enclitics **que**, *and*, **ve**, *or*, **ne**, *whether*, and sometimes **cum**, *with*, are written as part of the preceding word. Thus in Latin, the sentence given above would be, **puëri puellaeque adsunt**.

For Definitions in Syntax, see § 45.

III. PRONUNCIATION.

It is rather more than a thousand years since Latin has been familiarly spoken in common use, though it still continues to be the language of scholars in some places, and is very extensively used in the services and in all official documents of the Roman church. It is, however, not regarded anywhere now as a living tongue ; and its correct ancient pronunciation is uncertain. In schools and universities of different countries, it is generally pronounced in the way nearest to the native tongue of each. In particular, there are two methods practised among us, known as the English and the Continental, between which the teacher is expected to make his choice.

1. *The English Method.*

The following directions may be given to those who pronounce Latin in the English method :—

1. Form the habit of a *clear, accurate, and neat articulation*, with careful attention to the rules of Quantity and Accent (§§ 3, 4), — especially to the Quantity of Penultimate syllables, as given in § 78, III.

2. In the division of syllables, the English method adopts the following exceptions to the rule given in § 1 :—

a. A single consonant after any accented vowel in the antepenult except **u** is joined with it : as, **mon'itus**, **lu'cibus**.

But not with **a**, **e**, **o**, when the single consonant, or a mute with **l** or **r**, is followed by two vowels, the first of which is **e**, **i**, or **y** : as, **mo'neo**, **pa'tria**.

b. In all other cases, two consonants between two vowels are separated: *as, mag'nus, pat'ribus.*

3. An accented vowel at the end of a syllable has its long Engli. h sound; every vowel followed by a consonant in the same syllable is sounded short: *as, mā'nē, mǎ'nē* (pronounced alike), *harp̄'ia, mō'neo, mon'itum.*

Final *a* is sounded as in the last syllable of *America*. In *tibi* and *sibi*, *i* has its short sound, as in *hit*. In *post* and its compounds *postea, postquam*, *o* has the long sound, as in the similar English word; but in *postēri*, etc., it is short.

4. The Diphthongs *ae, oe* have the sound of *e*: that is, long in *caelum, amoe'nus*; short in *hae'sito, amoe'nitas*.

In poetry, *ci* may be regarded as a diphthong, as in *dein'do*, having the sound of *i* in *mind*; *eu* in *Orpheus*, etc., as in *feud*.

When *ui* is pronounced as a diphthong, it has the long sound of *i*; thus *cui, huic*, are pronounced *ki, hike*.

5. Consonants have generally the same power as in English. Thus, before *e, i, y*, and the diphthongs *ae, eu, oe*, *c* has the sound of *s*, and *g* of *j*.

ch has always the sound of *k*, as in *chemist*.

h is not reckoned as a consonant in Latin.

6. Where a combination of syllables in Latin is *similar to that familiar in English words*, it is common to give it the same sound as in English. Thus, in *natio, martius, mentio*, and (more doubtfully) *concio*, *t* or *c* may have the sound of *sh*. So, *too*, rarely, with *s* or *x*, as in *Asia, anxius*.

But where the word is distinctly foreign to us, or the combination of syllables is less familiar, it is better to retain the pure consonant sound; as in *mentiō'tur, Min'cius, cadu'ceus, Ly'sias, axiō'ma, noctum*.

7. It is very common in English pronunciation, to slur or suppress the more difficult consonant sounds, particularly in such cases as *cn, gn, ps, pt, tm*, or *x*, at the beginning of a word; as in *Cnidus, gnotus, pseudo-, pteria, Tmolus, xylon*. But, in an accurate pronunciation of these, as *Latin or Greek words*, the full consonant sound will be retained.

Finally, there can be no correct rule to authorize the slipshod and slovenly habit of enunciation which is frequently allowed. To cultivate a *clear and vigorous utterance of unfamiliar words*, is one of the incidental benefits of careful instruction in a foreign tongue.

II. *The Continental Method.*

In many parts of the country, the Continental system has been adopted, either wholly or in part. This has the obvious advantage of bringing our pronunciation of Latin into harmony with that of the great majority of educated persons, and of coming nearer the actual pronunciation of the ancients. We can only approach to this, as it is not possible to decide in all points what it was; and, if it were possible, it is likely that it would sound too strange and foreign to obtain adoption.

Thus, in all probability, **c** and **g** were always pronounced *hard*, **j** and **v** like *y* and *w*, and **u** like *oo*. For example, **juvĕnes vicinārum urbium** (*the youths of the neighboring cities*) would be pronounced *yu'wenace wekenar'oom oor'beoom*.

And besides, the distinction between long and short vowels must be observed, like time in music, each long syllable occupying double the time of a short one in pronouncing, — as in **pā'ter**, **mā'ter**, **sō'lis** (from **sōlum**), **sōllis** (from **sōl**), — a distinction nearly or quite impossible to English speech.

Neither is the usage of Continental scholars uniform, since each follows the analogy of his own language; so that there is considerable variance, especially in the sounds of the Consonants.

For example, **ce** and **ci**, or **ti** before a vowel, are frequently (following the custom of most German schools) pronounced *tsa*, *tse*: thus, **cedo** is *tsa'do*, and **otium**, *o'tseoom*. But it is doubtful whether this has any authority in the usage of the Romans.

Some, again, following the Italian, would pronounce **c** before **e** or **i** like *ch* in *choose*, and give **z** the sharp sound of *ts*.

Others are of opinion that **qu** should be pronounced like *k*, and **cu** like *qu* in English: thus **qui** (nom.) would have the sound of *ke*, and **cui** (dat.) of *que*. But in Italian, **q** (as in **qui**, **qua**,) is always sounded as with *us*.

To those who prefer the Continental method, and desire at the same time to make it familiar and easy to the learner, the following rules are recommended: —

1. Practise carefully the pure Italian sounds of the Vowels (§ 2, near the end); remembering that the mixed sound, or "vanish" characteristic of English vowels (as of *u* in *rebuke*, *fortune*,) is never heard in the Italian, where each vowel represents a single sound, *u* being always like *oo* in *moon*, or *u* in *full*.

2. For the Consonants, follow the directions given above for pronouncing in the English method, — for example, making *t* always distinct and hard: as, *Mar-ti-us*, not *Marshus*.

3. It will greatly aid in giving the pure pronunciation to the vowels, to divide the syllables as in § 1 at the end: thus, *dō'mī-nus mā'gnus re'xērāt*, *a great lord had ruled*.

But this rule does not apply to compound words, in which the words compounded are separated in the division by syllables: as, *ab-iens*, *ob-latus*.

4. In Diphthongs, the sounds of the separate vowels should be preserved: thus *au* will have nearly the sound of *ou* in *loud*; and *ae* of *ei* in *height*. But *ae* and *oe*, which are often interchanged with *ē*, may have the same sound if preferred.

5. In languages derived from Latin, Accent is much less strongly marked than in English. Hence it is often well to indicate *quantity rather than accent*, where it can be done without offending an English ear, — especially in syllables long by position (§ 78, i. 4), as in *immensus*.

The following rules of Accent, in addition to those given in § 4, are sanctioned by some of the best authorities: —

1. When an Enclitic is joined to a word, the accent falls on the syllable next before the enclitic, whether long or short: thus, *dēā'que*, *āmārē've*, *tībī'ne*?

2. If the vowel of the Penult is short, *i* or *u* coming immediately before it is to be regarded as a semi-vowel, and pronounced like *y* or *w*, the accent going back to the syllable before: as, *mū'liēres*, *mō'nuērāt*, *ō'ceānus*, *fī'liōlus*.

But in compounds, the accent will not be thrown back of the radical syllable: thus, *im-pī'ētās*, *ab-fu'ērāt*.

2. Principles of Inflection and Classification.

I. ROOTS AND STEMS.

1. Every inflected word consists of two parts,—the Root or Stem, and the Termination.

The Root is regarded as a primitive element of speech. It is usually a Monosyllable, of not more than three letters, ending in a consonant. Examples of Latin roots are the following:

ăcu-, sharpen.	fīg-, shupe.	mōn-, warn.	serp-, creep.
ăg-, drive.	flēo-, bend.	mōr-, die.	serv-, keep.
ăl-, rear, feed.	flū-, flow.	mōv-, move.	sīd-, sink.
ang-, choke.	fōd-, dig.	mūt-, change.	sīl-, be silent.
ard-, blaze.	fōv-, cherish.	năc-, win.	sist-, set firm.
aug-, increase.	frăg-, break.	năc-, link, join.	solv-, loosen.
bīb-, drink.	fūd-, pour.	nīt-, shine.	sōn-, sound.
căd-, fall.	fūg-, flee.	nōo-, harm.	sta-, set, stand.
caed-, cut.	fulg-, flash.	ōr-, rise.	strēp-, resound.
cāl-, get hot.	gaud-, rejoice.	păg-, fix.	strīg-, grasp.
căn-, sing.	gēr-, carry.	pand-, spread.	stru-, pile.
căp-, take.	gēm-, groan.	păr-, produce.	suăd-, urge.
căr-, lack.	gēn-, produce.	păs-, feed.	tăo-, be still.
carp-, pluck.	gno-, know.	pěl-, push.	tăg-, touch.
căd-, yield.	hăb-, have.	pend-, hang.	tēg-, cover.
cing-, gird.	haer-, stick.	pēt-, seek.	tēn-, stretch.
clūd-, shut.	haur-, draw.	pīg-, paint.	tēr-, rub.
cōl-, till.	jăc-, throw.	plăc-, approve.	terg-, wipe.
cōq-, cook.	jūg-, yoke.	plăg-, strike.	tex-, weave.
crē-, grow.	lăb-, slip.	pōs-, put.	tīg-, stain.
crēd-, believe.	laed-, hurt.	posc-, demand.	tīm-, fear.
cūb-, lie down.	lang-, droop.	prem-, press.	tōl-, raise.
cūp-, desire.	lăt-, be hid.	quaer-, seek.	tōr-, twist.
cūr-, run.	lăv-, wash.	quăt-, shake.	trah-, drag.
da-, put, give.	lax-, loosen.	răd-, scrape.	trēm-, quiver.
dīc-, say.	lęg-, gather.	răp-, seize.	trūd-, thrust.
dōc-, teach.	līb-, like.	rēg-, straighten.	tūm-, swell.
dōl-, ache, pain.	līo-, permit.	rēp-, creep.	ūr-, burn.
dōm-, tame.	līg-, bind.	rīd-, laugh.	urg-, press.
dūo-, lead.	līq-, quit.	rōd-, gnaw.	ūt-, use.
ēd-, eat.	lōq-, talk.	rū-, rush.	văl-, be strong.
ēm-, take, buy.	lūc-, get light.	rūp-, burst.	věl-, pluck.
fă-, say.	lūd-, play.	săl-, leap.	vert-, turn.
făc-, do.	lūg-, mourn.	scand-, climb.	vi-, force.
făl-, cheat.	măn-, wait.	sci-, know.	vīc-, conquer.
făt-, confess.	mēd-, heal.	scīd-, tear.	vīd-, see.
făv-, wish well.	mēr-, earn.	sēc-, cut.	vīv-, live.
fēr-, bear.	mīn-, lessen.	sēd-, sit.	vōl-, wish.
ferv-, boil.	misc-, mix.	sēq-, follow.	vōl-, fly.
fīd-, split.	mīt-, let go.	sēr-, put, sow.	volv-, roll.

The Stem is sometimes the same with the Root: as in *dūc-is*, *rēg-o*; but is more frequently formed from the root, either by lengthening its vowel, as in *rēg-is*, *dūc-o*; by the addition or insertion of a consonant, as in *tend-o*, *pang-o*; by the addition of a terminal vowel, as in *fuga*, *fugi-o*; or by derivation and composition, following the laws of development peculiar to the language, as found in the perfect and supine of most verbs, and in numerous groups of derivatives and compounds.

2. Stems may be divided into two classes,—those ending in a vowel, called Vowel-Stems; and those ending in a consonant, called Consonant-Stems. They are combined with the Terminations, according to the rules of Inflection of Nouns (including Adjectives, Pronouns, and Participles), and of Verbs. The inflectional forms given by the former are called Declensions; those given by the latter are called Conjugations.

The Terminations of Declension had originally nearly the same meaning in Latin as the prepositions which answer to them in English. When combined with the stems of nouns, they form declensions, or groups of Cases, which vary according to the final vowel or consonant to which they are attached.

II. CLASSIFICATION OF NOUNS.

1. Vowel-Stems of Nouns may be classed in five divisions, ending respectively with the five vowels, *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *u*. These vowels are found at the termination of the Ablative Singular, and before the termination of the Genitive Plural, in all the declensions; and may be seen in the following examples:—

DECL.	I. (a)	V. (e)	III. (i)	II. (o)	IV. (u)
ABL. SING.	ārā	diē	nāvi	āvō	ācū
GEN. PLUR.	ārārum	diērum	nāvium	āvōrum	ācūrum

They may be illustrated by the following English words:—

comma, money, pony, arrow, cuckoo.

NOTE.—The terminal vowel *i* is often interchanged with *e*, as *navi* or *nave*; thus the ablative of the third declension in most nouns becomes *e*.

2. The Terminations of Declension, in their earliest form, in Latin, are not certainly known; but they are considered,

from comparing the oldest monuments of the language with corresponding forms in other languages (especially Sanscrit and Greek), to have been nearly the following:—

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Abl.
SING.	s	is (ius)	i (bi)	m (n)	d
PLUR.	ses	rum	bus	ms	bus

NOTE. — In the nom. and acc. plural, the consonant is absorbed, *lengthening* the stem-vowel before the final *s*. The consonant so lost is either the hard sibilant *s* (nom.), or the obscure labial *m* (acc.), which is also dropped in poetry, before an initial vowel, by the usage called *Ecthlipsis*.

3. Combining these terminations with the stems (or “crude forms”) given above, we have the following table of inflections for the five declensions:—

Sing. I.	II.	III.	IV.	V.
N. arā s	avō s	avī s	acū s	diē s
G. ara is (aī)	avo is (ius)	avi is	acu is	die is (ēi)
D. ara i	avo i (i)	avi i	acu i	die i
A. ara m	avo m	avi m	acu m	die m
A. arā d	avō d	avī d	acū d	diē d
Plur.				
N. ara es (ae)	avo es (i)	avies (ēs)	acues (ūs)	die es (ēs)
G. ara rum	avo rum	avi rum	acu rum	die rum
D. ara bus	avo bus	avi bus	acu bus	die bus
A. ara ms	avo ms	avi ms (īs)	acu ms (ūs)	die ms (ēs)

1. The letters weakened or lost in process of use, are represented in the above Table in lighter type.

2. The abl. sing. ending in *d* is found in the oldest inscriptions: as, on the Column of Duilius, in *altod marid*, *on the high sea*. Its effect is seen in later use, in lengthening the stem-vowel: as in *arā*, from *arā*.

3. The endings *āi*, *ius* (gen. sing.), *āi*, *i* (dat. sing.), *ābus*, *ōbus* (dat., abl. plur.), remain in use in several words (§§ 9, 2, 4; 16, 1.; 18, 1., 2). The dative ending *bi* is found in *tibi*, *sibi*, and in the locative adverbs, *ibi*, *ubi*.

4. In the Third Declension, the stem-vowel *i* is retained in many words (as *turris*, *puppis*, T. 2, 1., 5, 6), in every case except the nom. plural: but, in most words of this declension, it is lost (or weakened into *e*) in the acc. and abl. singular also.

4. Consonant Stems are classed in four divisions, corresponding with the following classification of consonants :—

LIQUID, l, m, n, r.		SIBILANT, s.			
MUTE	Labial	surd p	sonant b	aspirate f (v)	nasal m
„	Lingual	„ t	„ d	„ [th]	„ n
„	Palatal	„ c (k)	„ g	„ [kh]	„ [ng]

Nouns of consonant stems are all of the Third Declension. Many (especially monosyllables) having mute stems ending in two consonants (as *urbs*, *nox*), appear to be vowel stems that have lost in the nominative the characteristic vowel of this declension (i), which is found in the gen. plural *urbium*, *noctium*; in the old nominatives, *sortis*, *trabis*; and in the secondary form of the acc. plural, *urbis*, *noctis*.

5. The combination of consonant stems with the case-endings is shown as follows :—

Sing.	LIQUID.	LABIAL.	LINGUAL.	PALATAL.
NOM.	honor s (ōs)	op s	aetats (ās)	reg s (x)
GEN.	honor is	op is	aetat is	reg is
DAT.	honor i	op i	aetat i	reg i
ACC.	honor em	op em	aetat em	reg em
ABL.	honor ed	op ed	aetated	reg ed
<i>Plur.</i>				
NOM. ACC.	honor es	opes	aetates	reg es
GEN.	honor um	opum	aetat um	reg um
DAT. ABL.	honor ibus	op ibus	aetat ibus	reg ibus

1. The connecting vowel (ē, ī), where required to unite the stem with the termination, is given in lighter type.

2. In the plural of consonant-stems, and in all neuters, — not only in Latin, but in all kindred languages, — there is no separate form for the accusative.

3. Masculines and feminines of liquid stems, and neuters of mute stems, do not take s in the nominative.

4. Adjectives follow the same rules of inflection as nouns.

5. The personal and relative Pronouns (§§ 19, 21) have in several of their cases — as in *mihi*, *tibi*, *illud*, *illius*, *cujus*, and the obsolete *med*, *quocius*, *quoi* — forms corresponding more nearly with the earliest case-endings than any that are found in nouns.

6. *a.* There is no special form for the Vocative in Latin, except in the singular of nouns in *us*, of the second declension. *All Roman prænomens and gentile names* (§ 15) — that is, all names by which a boy or man would commonly be addressed — are of this form; together with many of the words (such as *filius*, *servus*) most likely to be used as appellatives. These all have a vocative, or form of familiar and direct address, ending in the easy vowel sound *ŏ* or *i*.

b. Nouns of the first declension, including all names of women and girls, end in the open vowel *a*, and require no special vocative form.

c. Nouns of the fourth and fifth declensions include very few words, and no class of words, likely ever to be used in direct address. So with mute-stems of the third declension, excepting a few, as *dux*, *rex*.

c. Most proper names or appellatives not ending in *us* are nouns of liquid stems. Those ending in *l* or *r* — as *consul*, *imperator* — require no modification, and the stem serves both for narrative and address. Those which end in *n* drop the final consonant, both in the nominative and vocative, which end in the open vowel *o*: these include many family names, as *Cicero*, *Maro*; with names of crafts, as *caupo*; and numerous nicknames, as *verbero*, common in the dramatists. Greek names, such as *Plato*, — which in Greek have the nom. *ῥῆν*, shortened in the vocative into *ῥῆν*, — also end in Latin in the open vowel *o*.

III. AGREEMENT.

Agreement, in gender, number, and case, is a form of inflection in the adjective, participle, etc., corresponding with that of the noun to which they belong. It is often a necessity in a language admitting great freedom in the arrangement of words, like Latin; but in many cases it seems to be merely the demand of the ear for harmony and correspondence. In these cases it is called *Attraction*.

1. In some cases, — as in most cardinal numbers, — where the adjective is closely and constantly connected with the noun it belongs to, so that there is no liability of confusion, no inflection is found.

2. In certain other cases, — as in the genitive of the personal pronouns, which in actual speech are thrown into close relations with a great variety of objects, — the limiting word *tends to take the adjective inflection*, for the sake of both euphony and clearness. In the case of the pronouns, this form of inflection is called the Possessive Adjective, which may be considered as *a developed or inflected Genitive*. It is used regularly for the genitive of possession; rarely for the objective genitive (§ 50, III., 1); and is constantly put in apposition with the genitive of nouns (§ 46, 3) — thus serving all the functions of a true genitive, but taking the adjective inflection, apparently in order to be more grateful to the ear. The so-called genitive of the personal pronoun, — *mei, nostri, nostrum, tui, vestri, vestrum*, — is held by Madvig to be the genitive (singular or plural) of the Possessive.

3. This is also the case with numerous other genitives, especially those of proper names, official titles, or personal appellatives, which in like manner often take the inflection of adjectives (§ 47, v.). Thus, *patris* becomes *patrius*; *regis*, *regius*; *puer*, *puerilis*; and Cicero (Att. IV. 3) uses the phrase, *ex Anniana Milonis domo*, *out of Annius Milo's house*.

4. In like manner, the names of months are reckoned as adjectives in Latin, and take the terminations agreeing with the words *mensis* (M.), *kalendae*, *nonae*, *idus* (F.), with which they are used.

5. An example of Attraction is seen in the usage called the Gerundive, — in which the governing participle (gerund) is made to agree with the word which it appears to govern. Thus, in the phrase *urbis delendae causā*, the direct construction would be, *urbem delendi causā*; for which the former appears to have been substituted purely for the sake of euphony. In older use, the gerund was probably the form oftenest employed, in all the cases: thus we have in Plautus the nominative *agitandum est vigilias*, where in later use we should expect *agitandae sunt vigiliae*. Here, the gerundive “governs the word it agrees with,” — like the participle in the French, *les plumes que j'ai achetées*, where the compound verb is “attracted” into the gender and number of the object which it governs. So the corresponding Greek verbal is used, like the gerundive in Latin, in a passive sense, agreeing with the subject; while its neuter nominative is used actively, as a gerund, governing the object.

IV. INFLECTION OF VERBS.

The terminations of Conjugation — or personal endings of Verbs — had originally the same meaning with the pronouns which represent them in English. When combined with the stems of verbs, they form inflections, which vary, for conjugation, voice, mood and tense, according to the final consonant or vowel (or what is called the connecting vowel) of the stem to which they are attached.

Some of their earlier forms, as found in several languages more or less distantly related to Latin, may be seen in the following Table, giving the present indicative of the Substantive Verb *to be* (root, *es*) : —

	Sanskrit.	Greek.	Latn.	Slavonic.	Lithuanian.	English.
SING. 1.	as-mi	em-mi*	s-um	yes-mi	es-mi	<i>am</i>
2.	as-i	es-si*	es	yes-si	es-i	<i>art</i>
3.	as-ti	es-ti	es-t	yes-ti	es-ti	<i>is</i>
PLUR. 1.	s-mas	es-men	s-umus	yes-mu	es-me	<i>(are)</i>
2.	s-ta	es-te	es-tis	yes-te	es-te	<i>(are)</i>
3.	s-anti	(s)-enti*	s-unt	s-unti	es-ti	<i>(are)</i>

Verb-stems may be classed, like those of nouns, as vowel or consonant stems. Those ending in the vowels *a*, *e*, *i*, are found in verbs of the first, second, and fourth conjugations respectively; those ending in a consonant, in the third. A few stems ending in *i* or *u* are also classed with the third conjugation (see § 30, I., III.) A few ending in *o* — as *boo*, *to bawl* — take the connecting vowel of the first conjugation.

The personal endings of verbs, for the active and passive voice, are given in § 28. Their combination with the stem-vowel or consonant may be traced in the terminations of the four regular conjugations.

Verbs whose stem ends in *a* (first conjugation) have generally an active or transitive force: as, *fugāre*, *put to flight*, compared with the intransitive *fugere*, *to flee*.

Verbs whose stems end in *e* (second conjugation) have generally a neuter intransitive meaning, signifying a state or condition: as, *caleo*, *to be hot*, compared with *calefacio* (or *-facto*), *to heat*; or with the inceptive *calesco*, *to grow hot*.

For the signification of other derivative verb-forms, see § 36.

3. On some peculiar Constructions in Latin.

I. IDIOMS.

An Idiom is a form of phrase varying from the laws of general grammar, resulting from the habits of thought or custom of speech prevailing among any people.

Compared with most modern languages, especially English, there are very few idiomatic constructions in Latin. The most marked of all—the use of the Gerundive—has been treated under the head of Inflection. It may be regarded as simply a case of Attraction, and presents no difficulty whatever in the construction of the sentence.

The idiomatic expressions found in the dramatists, especially Plautus, are simply exhibitions of popular humor, coming rather under the designation of *slang*. They are very interesting as studies of the genius and temper of the people; but have had no effect whatever on the structure of the language itself, or its laws of composition.

The most idiomatic construction found in ordinary use is the Ablative Absolute (§ 54, x.) This may be described as simply the Apposition of the subject and predicate in *parenthesis*,—being introduced by way of explanation, and not depending on the main structure of the sentence in which it stands. Thus, in direct construction, *Caesar consul erat*, *Caesar was consul*; but in parenthesis, *Caesare consule*, *while Caesar was consul*. The predicate in Ablative Absolute is most frequently a participle; as, *Caesare interfecto*, *when Caesar was slain*; but it may be either a noun or adjective (as in the former example,—assuming, if we choose, the imaginary participle of *esse*, *to be*); or the neuter ablative of a passive participle used without any subject,—impersonally, or adverbially: as, *consulto*, *deliberately* (*the matter having been consulted on*).

II. SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES.

The chief difficulty of understanding Latin consists not (like that of modern languages) in the use of idioms, but in

the great frequency and extent with which it employs a few easy grammatical artifices. These are, the use of the historical infinitive (§ 49, III.); the omission of the copula *esse*, — very common, especially in the periphrastic forms (§ 40), and in such condensed and elliptical writers as Tacitus; and the use of Substantive Clauses (§ 70). The last alone requires any special illustration. It may be briefly explained as follows:—

1. A phrase or sentence is often used in Latin, instead of a noun, either as Subject or Object of the leading verb. So used, it may be called a Substantive Clause.

2. When a substantive clause is used as Subject, its own principal verb may be in the Infinitive (with or without a subject-accusative), or in the Subjunctive with *ut* (§ 70, II., III.) The verb to which the clause is subject is then called Impersonal: as in the example, *miseret me te esse pauperem; restat ut fortiter progrediamur*.

3. When a substantive clause is used as Object, it usually depends on some verb of knowing, thinking, or telling (*sentienti aut declarandi*, § 52, VI.; 67, I., 2), and its own principal verb is in the Infinitive, with subject-accusative. It then called *Oratio Obliqua* (§ 67); and may be expanded into a narrative or discourse of indefinite length, frequent in Cæsar and in Livy.

4. When a substantive clause contains an inquiry, or is introduced by an interrogative word, it is called an Indirect Question.

5. The subordinate verb in a substantive clause always takes the subjunctive, *when it expresses the reason of an act, or an essential part of the thought or argument*; but not, necessarily, when the thought expressed by it may be regarded as distinct: thus,

oportet puerum qui ludat vapulare, a boy who plays must be flogged; — where *qui ludat* gives the reason of the flogging; but,

oportet hunc puerum, qui ludit, vapulare, this boy, who is playing, has got to be flogged, — perhaps for something else.

It will be observed that the Subjunctive Mood in Latin has, in general, *no special meaning of its own*, as distinct from the Indicative; but is only a parallel form of inflection, required in certain constructions, which have been classified in the Syntax.

Most of these cases may be reduced to two groups: first, Conditional Sentences, —including Implied Conditions, together with Wishes, Commands, and Purposes; secondly, Intermediate Clauses, which express the thought or feeling of some other person than the writer or speaker (§ 66, 1.) Such intermediate clauses are found especially in the *Oratio Obliqua*, and other classes of Substantive Clauses described above.

A few cases of Subjunctives are hard to reduce to either of these heads. Subjunctives of Result (§ 65) probably belong to the second head. They may be, however, as D'Arcy Thompson suggests, only an imitation of Final Clauses: in Greek, they take the Indicative.

NOTE. — Many of the statements and grammatical forms in the foregoing Supplement, especially in the section on Classification and Inflection, are taken from Bopp's Comparative Grammar, Key's Crude-form Grammar, and Donaldson's Complete Latin Grammar, together with his "*Varronianus*." The classifying of nouns by their vowel-endings was first proposed by Varro, the friend of Cicero, who took the form of the ablative singular as the basis of his system.

While we consider the view here presented to be of much interest and value as a key to the structure of the language, it may be well, in practice, to vary from the natural order in which the forms are given, — for example, in the third declension taking liquid stems first, as in "*Latin Lessons*;" and not to perplex the learner with any theory of stem-endings, till later in his course.

INDEX.

THE NUMBERS REFER TO PAGES.

- a** or **ab**, 47; in composition, 2;
after passive verbs, 77.
- abesse**, 30.
- Ablative**, 5; plural ending, id.;
in **abus**, 6; **i**, 8; **SYNTAX**, 69;
of cause, etc., id.; of manner,
etc., 70; after special verbs
and adjectives, id.; after
comparatives, 71; of separation,
id.; after **opus** and
usus, id.; of origin, 72; of
price, id.; absolute, id.; of
time, 73; of distance, id.;
of place, 74; of direction,
75; after prepositions, 46,
75; of agent (with **ab**), 77,
of gerunds, 101.
- ac.** — *See* **atque**.
- Accent**, 3; of **ingeni**, **Vergili**,
etc., 7; of **benefacia**, etc., 42.
- Accusative**, 4; ending, 5; **im**, 8.
SYNTAX, 66; after neuter
verbs, 67; two accusatives,
id.; adverbial (synecdoche),
68; in exclamations, id.; as
subject of infinitive, id. 92;
of time, 73; of space, id.;
of distance, id.; of place, 74;
of gerunds, 100.
- ad**, 47; in composition, 2, 65.
- adesse**, 30.
- Adjectives**, 14; comparison,
15, 56; agreement, 54; as
nouns, 55; equivalent to gen.,
56; denoting a part, id.; fol-
lowed by gen., 61; by dat. 63.
- Adverbs**, 44; numeral, 19;
comparison, 44; partitive, 61.
- aer**, acc. **aera**, 10.
- Agreement**, rules of, 53.
- aio**, 43.
- al** and **-ar**, neuter endings, 8.
- Alcaic strophe**, 116.
- alius**, use, 56; gen., 14.
- Alphabet**, 1.
- alter**, as correl., 23; gen., 14.
- ambo**, declension, 19.
- amplius**, peculiar use, 71.
- an** (**annon**), 98.
- ante**, in expression of time, 73;
in the day of the month, 76;
with **quam**, 77.
- Antecedent**, 57.
- Antepenult**, 3.
- antequam**, with subjunctive,
86.
- ap̄age**, 43.
- Apodosis**, 81; in **oratio ob-**
liqua, 92.
- Apposition**, 53; with locative
case, 54.
- aptus**, followed by subjunctive,
90.
- Arrangement**, 103.
- Arsis**, 113.
- as** (Roman coin), 120.
- Asclepiadic verse**, 117.
- at**, 30; compared with **v̄erum**,
etc., 48.
- atque** (**ac**), compared with **et**,
etc., 47; in a relative use,
23, 50.
- audeo**, 40.
- aut**, compared with **vel**, etc., 48.
- autem**, compared with **at**, etc.,
48; position, 50.
- Authority in Prosody**, 105.
- āve**, 43.

- belli**, as a locative, 74.
bŏe, declension, 10.
c for **k** and **q**, 1; pronunciation, 2, 126, 127.
Cæsūra, 113.
Cardinal numbers, 18.
Cases, 4.
cāve, in prohibitions, 80.
causā, with gen. (motive), 69; of gerunds, 101. [-ce, 21.
cŏdo (defective), 43.
celo, with two accusatives, 67.
certe and **certo**, compared, 45.
circum, compounds of, with accusative, 67.
clam, as preposition, 76.
coepl, 43.
Collective nouns, with plural verbs, 59.
Comparative, of adjectives, 15; its use, 17; of adverbs, 44; followed by ablative, 71.
Comparison, 3; of adjectives, 15; irregular, 16; of adverbs, 44; between adjectives, 17, 56.
Compound nouns, 52.
con (cum), in composition, 2.
Conditional sentences, 81, 92.
Conjugation, 3; rules of, 38; four conjugations, 82, T. 7-11.
Conjunctions, 47.
Consonants, 1.
Copula, 53, omitted, 39.
Correlatives, 23.
constructio ad sensum, 55.
cŏtidie for **quotidie**, 1.
Crime, 62.
cum, prep., appended to pronouns, 21, 22; to express manner, &c., 76.
cum (quum) conj., 49; in the sense of *although*, 85; *when*, 86; *because*, 87.
Dactylic measure, 115.
Dative case, 4; ending, 5; in **abus**, 6; **SYNTAX**, 63; of advantage, 64; **ethic**, id.; of indirect object, id.; after certain verbs, id.; after nouns, 65; after prepositions in composition, id.; of possession, 66; of end, 67; after the gerundive, id.; of gerunds, 101.
de, compared with **ab** and **ex**, 47; in denoting crime, 62.
dēbul, with present infinitive, 79.
Declension, 3; five declensions, 5; first, 6; second, 7; third, 8; fourth, 11; fifth, 12; irregular, 12; of adjectives, 14; third declension, 15; of gerund, 27; inflections, 190.
Definitions in Syntax, 53.
deinde, following **primum**, 46.
Demonstratives, 21; (correlatives, 23;) with particle, supplied by relative, 85.
Deponent verbs, 40, T. 14.
Desideratives, 41.
deus, declined, 7.
dico, imperative **dic**, 38.
dies, masc., 12.
dignus, followed by ablative, 70; by subjunctive, 90.
Diminutives, 50, 132.
Diphthongs, 1; quantity, 2.
Direction and distance, 73.
Distributive numerals, 19.
divum for **deorum**, 7.
domi, 12; locative, 79.
dŏmus, declension, 11.
dŏnēo, with subjunctive, 86.
dūco, imperative **duc**, 38.
dum, in the sense of *while*, 79, 86; *provided*, 85; *until*, 86.
dummŏdo, with sub., 85.
duo, declined, 19.
dumtaxat, 30.
Ecthlipsis, 114.
ēdo, eat, 42.
ecus for **equus**, 1.
Elegiac verse, 115. [125.
Elision, 114. **Enclitics**, 98, 106.
Endings, personal, of verbs, 30.
enim, compared with **nam**, 48; position, 50.

- eo**, 42.
Epicleses, 4.
-er, adj. ending, 3d decl., 15.
ergo, compared with **igitur**, etc., 49.
es final, pronunciation, 2.
esse, paradigm, 30; omitted, 39.
est, with preceding word, 2.
et, compared with **que**, etc., 47;
 et . . . et, 50.
et̄n̄im, 48; position, 50.
et̄iam, compared with **quōque**, 45.
et̄al, compared with **quamvis**, etc., 85.
ETYMOLOGY, 1-52.
ex, compared with **ab** and **de**, 47; in composition, 2; for partitive genitive, 61.
Exclamations, 68.
fācio, 42; compounds, id.; imperative **fac**, 38.
fāri, 43.
Feet in Prosody, 111.
fel (genitive **fellis**), 10.
fēro, 42; imperative, **fer**, 38.
fido, 40. [**Festivals** (pl.) 12].
Final syllables, rules of quantity in, 106.
fio, 42; quantity, 106.
fōre ut, with subjunctive, 94.
Formation of words, 50, 132.
Frequentatives, 41.
frētus, followed by Abl., 70.
fr̄uor, governing ablative, 70.
fungor, governing ablative, 70.
Future tenses, 29; infinitive in **oratio obliqua**, 94.
g, pronunciation, 2.
gaudeo, 40.
Gender, 4; 3d decl., 11, T. 2.
General truths, 79, 83.
Genitive case, 4; ending, 5; in **āi** and **as**, 6; in **ium** (plural), in vowel stems, 8, 125. in consonant stems, 11; in **ius**, 7, 15; syntax, 59; subjunctive, id.; of quality, 60; as appositive, id.; after adjectives, id., 61; partitive, 60; objective, 61; after verbs, 62; of measure, 73; of gerunds, 100.
Gerunds, 27; syntax, 99, 100.
Gerundives, 26, 44; syntax, 99.
Glyconic verse, 117.
Gothic languages, 29.
Government, 53; rules, 59.
grātīā, with gen. (motive), 69.
Greek nouns, first decl., 6; second decl., 7; third decl., 10.
Greek words in Prosody, 105.
Hexameter verse, 115.
Hiatus, 114.
hic, compared with **is**, etc., 21.
Horace, odes of, 118.
hūmī, locative, 74.
Iambic verse, 116.
Ictus, 113.
id̄circo, compared with **it̄aque**, etc., 49.
id̄em, **eādem**, **id̄em**, 22.
Id̄ōneus, followed by subjunctive, 90.
id̄ quod, 58.
-ier, (infin. pass.), 38.
igitur, compared with **id̄circo**, etc., 49; position, 50.
ille, compared with **hic**, 21.
-im, (subjunctive), 38.
Imperative, 25; future, 26, 80; passive (formed), 38; syntax, 80; in **oratio obliqua**, 93.
Imperfect tense, 28; compared with perfect, 29.
Imperfect subjunctive, formation, 38; in conditional sentences, 82; potential, 83.
Impersonals, with dative, 65; of verbs of saying, &c., 94.
in, compared with **ad**, 47; syntax, 46, 75; in composition, 2.
Inceptive or inchoative verbs, 41.
Increment, 11; quantity, 108.
Indeclinable nouns, 12; neut. 4.
Indefinite pronouns, 23; correlatives, id.

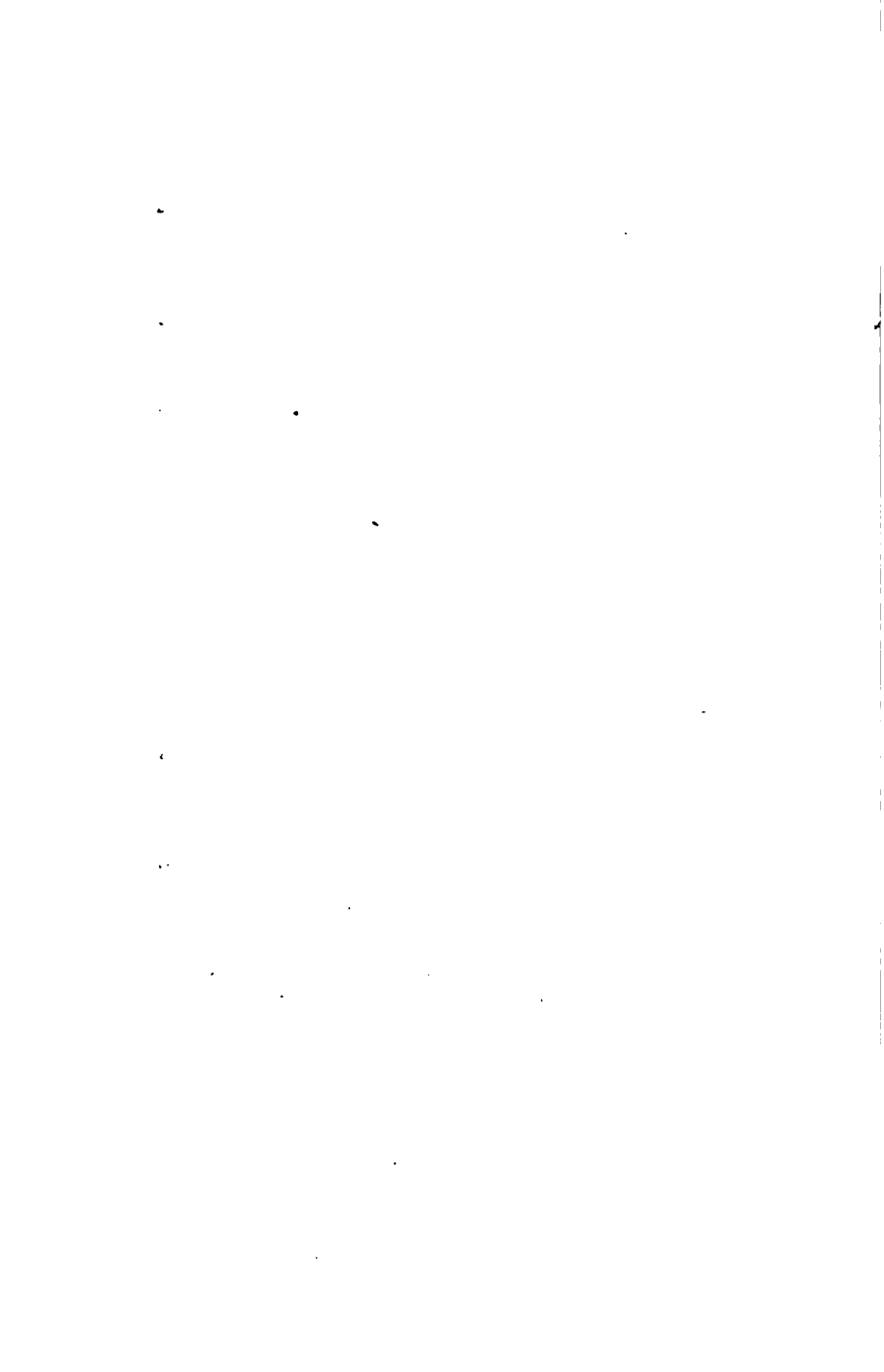
Indicative, 24; syntax, 80; in conditional sentences, 82; for subjunctive, 83; after *quamquam*, etc., 85; with *cum* temporal, 86; after *dum*, *while*, etc., id.; with *cum* in sense of *quod*, 87; with *quod* in substantive clauses, 97.
indignus, followed by ablative, 70; by subjunctive, 90.
 Infinitive, 26; syntax, 81; historical, 59; time of tenses, 79; subject or object of verb, 81; expressing purpose, id.; with subject accusative, 68, 92; after verbs of wishing, 95; after impersonal verbs, 97; as noun, 56, 81, 100.
 Inflection, 3, 129–136.
inquam, 43.
 Instrument and agent, 69, 77.
 Intensive verbs, 41.
interest, constructions, 63.
 Interrogative pronouns, 22; correlatives, 23; particles, 98.
ipse, 22.
 Irregularities, in nouns, 11, 12; in comparison, 16; in verbs, 38.
is, compared with *hic*, etc., 22.
iste, compared with *is*, etc., 22.
istaque, compared with *ergo*, etc., 49.
iter, declension, 10.
ius, gen. 7, 17; quantity, 106.
jam, compared with *nunc*, 45.
jēcur, declension, 11.
jūbeo, with acc. and inf., 96.
Juppiter, declension, 11.
 Labials, 1, 9.
lac (genitive, *lactis*), 10.
lampas, declension, 11.
loet, 85.
 Linguals, 1, 10. Liquids, 1, 9.
 Locative case, 5; second decl., 7; in *e*, 11, 74; syntax, 74; with noun in appos., 54.
māgis, *maxime*, 16.
mālo, 41

Measure, 70, 73.
mei, objective genitive, 20.
māl (genitive, *mellis*), 10.
mēmīni, 43; with pres. inf., 79.
 Metre, 114. [—met, 21.
milliāe, as a locative, 74.
mille, 19.
mīnus, peculiar use, 71.
mīnōria, gen. of price, 72.
mīāreor, *mīāresco* and *mīāret*, with gen., 62.
mōdo, with subjunctive, 85.
 Money, reckoning of, 13, 119.
 Months, days of, 76, 119.
 Moods, 24; syntax, 80.
 Mute consonants, 1; stems, third declension, 9, 132.
nam, compared with *enim*, 48.
 Names, proper, 13, 120.
namque, 48; position, 50.
nā, with imperative, 25, 80; in final clauses, 88; after verbs of fearing, 88; of hindering, 89; omitted, id.
—nā, in questions, 98.
nēc. — See *neque*.
necne, 98.
nēque (*nec*), 47, 50.
nequeo, 42.
nescio an; *nescio quis*, 92.
neuter, gen., 14.
 Neuter Adjectives, 55, 60, 68.
 Neuter endings, 5.
 Neuter part. with *opus*, 71.
 Neuter verbs, used impersonally, 44; governing acc., 66.
 Neut. and Neutr. Passive, 40.
nīal, 81, *nēve*, 25.
nōli, in prohibitions, 80.
nōlo, 41.
 Nominative case, 4; for vocative, 68; governing acc., 66.
nonne, 98.
nostri and *nostrum*, uses compared, 20.
 Nouns, 6; irregular, 12; defective, id.; indeclinable, id.; variable, 13; endings, 125.
nullus, genitive, 14.
num, 98.

- Numerals, 18.
 nunc, compared with jam, 45.
 o for u, 2.
 ob, expressing motive, 69.
 Object, 53.
 Object clauses, 96.
 Oblique cases, 5.
 ōdi, 43.
 ōpērā, with gen. (instrument), 69.
 ōportuit, with pres. inf., 79.
 ōpus, followed by abl., 71.
 orātio obliqua, 91.
 Ordinal numbers, 18.
 os, final, pronunciation, 2; in second declension, 7.
 pālam, as preposition, 76.
 Palatals, 1; stems, 3d decl., 10.
 Participles, 26; examples of use, 27; syntax, 99; abl. absolute, 72.
 Particles, 3; interrogative, 98.
 Passive voice, 24; used reflectively, id.; formation, 38; impersonally of neuter verbs, 44, 65; use of, 129.
 Patronymics, 50; patrials, 10.
 pēlāgus, neuter, 7.
 Pentameter, 115.
 Penalty, 62.
 Penult, 3; quantity of, 108.
 per, with living beings (instrument), 69.
 Perfect tense, 28; compared with imperfect, 29; indefinite used for definite, 79.
 Perfect subjunctive, use, 78.
 Periphrastic forms, 44.
 Period, 104.
 Personal pronouns, 20.
 pertaesum est, with gen., 62.
 pēto, used with preposition, 67.
 Pherecratic verse, 117.
 pīget, with genitive, 62.
 Place, 74.
 Pluperfect subjunctive, formed, 38; in conditional sentences, 83; in oratio obliqua, 93.
 plūris, genitive of price, 72.
 plus, peculiar use, 71.
 poenitet, with genitive, 62.
 Position, 106.
 posse, 30.
 Possessive adj. pronouns, 21; as noun, 55; for gen. 21, 56; with dōmi, &c., 74.
 post, in expressions of time, 73; with quam, 77.
 posteāquam (postquam), followed by perfect indicative, 28, 78, 86.
 postridie, with gen., 63; with acc., 76.
 postūlo, used with prepos., 67.
 Potential subjunctive, 84.
 pōtior, with abl., 70; with gen., 63.
 pōtui, with pres. inf., 79.
 praesens, 30.
 praesertim, strengthening the relative, 87.
 Predicate, 53.
 Prepositions, 46; syntax, 75; governing dative in compounds, 65; governing acc. in compounds, 67.
 Present subjunctive, in conditional sentences, 82; in wishes, 95.
 Present tense, 28; historical, id., 78; with dum, 79.
 pridie, with gen., 63; with acc., 76.
 primum and primo, comp., 46.
 Principal parts of verbs, 39.
 prius, with quam, 77.
 priusquam, with subj., 86.
 pro, in defence of, 64.
 prōdesse, 30.
 Prohibitions, 80.
 Pronouns, 20, 23; (personal) omitted with verbs, 59.
 Pronunciation, 2, 125-128.
 prōpior, prōpius, used like prepositions, 76.
 propter, expressing motive, 69.
 PROSODY, 105-118.
 prōtāsia, 81.
 proximus and proxime, used like prepositions, 76.

- pūdet*, with *gen.*, 62.
quae res, referring to a clause, 58.
quasro, with preposition, 67.
quam, with superlatives, 17; after comparatives, *id.*
quamquam, compared with *etiam*, etc., 85.
quamvis, with subjunctive, 85.
quando, 49; with subjunctive, 87.
quanti, as *gen.* of price, 72.
Quantity, 2; in Prosody, 105.
quasi, with subjunctive, 85.
-que, 47; *quantity*, 106.
queo, 42.
Questions, 98; indirect, 25, 91; in *oratio obliqua*, 94; doubtful, 84.
quā, 49; with subjunctive, 87.
quin, with subjunctive, 89; non *quin*, 87. [87.
quippe, strengthening relative, *quisque* with superlative, 17.
quo, with subjunctive, 88; non *quo*, 87.
quoad, with subjunctive, 86.
quod, 49; with subjunctive, 87; in substantive clauses, 97.
quōmīnus, with subjunctive, 90.
quōniam, 49; with subjunctive, 87.
quōque, compared with *etiam*, 45.
quum. — See *cum*.
Reduplication, 33; *quantity*, 109.
rēfert, construction, 63.
Reflective pronouns, 20; verbs, 24, 68.
Relative pronouns, 22; indefinite, 23; in conditional sentences, 81; correlatives, 23; SYNTAX, 57; for the demonstrative, 58; implying cause, 87; purpose, 88; result, 89; after *dignus*, etc., 90; after general expressions, *id.*; after *quam*, *id.*; with subjunctive, 96.
Rhythm, 105.
Root, 3; verb-roots, 131.
rūre and *rūri*, 74.
salve, 43.
Sapphic verse and *strophe*, 116.
Scanning, 113.
solo, imper. 38, *scin*, 2.
sed, compared with *at*, etc., 48.
Senarius (iambic), 116.
Septenarius (trochaic), 118.
seu. — See *sive*.
si, 81. [-*sim*, -*so* (subj.), 38.
sic for *sivis*, 41.
sive, compared with *aut*, etc., 48.
sōdes for *si audeas*, 40.
sōleo, 40.
sōlus, *gen.*, 14; with subjunctive, 90.
Space, measure of, 73.
Stanza or *strophe*, 114.
Stem, 3; of verbs, 32, 39, 40; syllables, quantity of, 109.
sub, 75; in composition, 2.
Subject, 53; clauses, 96.
Subjunctive mood, 24; examples of use, 25; general rules, 80; conditional sentences, 82; implied conditions, 84; after particles, 85; temporal clauses, 86; cause, 87; purpose, 88; result, 89; intermediate clauses, 90; indirect questions, 91; *oratio obliqua*, 93; wishes, 95; relative clauses, 96.
Substantive verb, 53; clauses, 96.
subter, 76.
sui, use of, 20.
stipullex, declension, 11.
super, 75; superlative of adjectives, 15; use, 17; with *quam*, *id.*; denoting a part, 56.
Supines, 28; syntax, 101.
Syllables, division, 2; contraction, 2.

- Synalœpha, 114.
 Synapheia, 114.
 Syncopation, 38.
 Synecdoche, 68.
 Synesis, 55, 59, Synopsis, 39.
 SYNTAX, 53-104.
 taedet, with gen., 62.
 tamen, position, 50.
 tamquam, with subjunctive, 85.
 tanti, as gen. of price, 72.
 Tasting, etc., verbs of, 67.
 Tenses, 28; primary and secondary, 29, 77; formation, 29; sequence, 77; of completed action, 29, 78. [12.
 tēnus, 76. Terminations, T. 2,
 Tetrameter, 115.
 Thesis, 113.
 Time, 73; adverbs of, 76; relations of, 86; Roman reckoning of, 119.
 tōtus, gen., 15.
 trans, compounds of, with two accusatives, 67.
 tres, declined, 19.
 Trimeter, 116.
 tui, use of, 20.
 tum and tunc, compared, 45.
 u, 1.
 ūbi, with perfect indicative, 28, 78, 86.
 ūnus, gen., 15; followed by subjunctive, 90.
 ūsus, followed by abl., 71.
 ut, 30; in the sense of although, 85; strengthening relative, 87; purpose, 88; after verbs of fear, id.; omitted, id.; meaning *how* and *when*, id.; result, 89; in substantive clauses, 97, 98.
 ut ne, 88.
 ūter, gen., 14.
 ūtor, governing abl., 71.
 utpōte, strengthening relative, 87.
 utrum, 98.
 v, 1.
 vel (ve), compared with sive, etc., 48.
 vēlim and vellem, compared, 84.
 vēlūti, with subjunctive, 85.
 Verbs, 24; paradigms, 34; dependent, 40; derivative, 41; irregular, id.; defective, 43; impersonal, id.; agreement, 58; syntax, 77; of hindering, &c., 89; roots, 129.
 Verbal adjectives, 52.
 Verse, 113; forms of, 115.
 vērum, compared with sed, etc., 48.
 vescor, governing abl., 70.
 vestrum and vestri compared, 20.
 vin' for viane, 2.
 vīrus, neuter, 7.
 vīs, declension, 8.
 Vocative, 5; form, 5; 2d decl., 7; in 1, 8; syntax, 68.
 Voices, 24.
 vōlo, 41.
 Vowels, 1; varied, 2; quantity, 2; stem of 3d decl., 8.
 vulgus, neuter, 7.



THE NEW CLASSICAL COURSE.

GOODWIN'S GREEK GRAMMAR.

By Prof. W. W. GOODWIN, of Harvard College.

(SEE THIRD PAGE.)

GREEK LESSONS AND READER

In Preparation.

ALLEN'S LATIN COURSE.

(SEE FIFTH AND SIXTH PAGES.)

MADVIG'S LATIN GRAMMAR.

(SECOND PAGE.)

HUDSON'S SCHOOL SHAKESPEARE.

(FOURTH PAGE.)

CRAIK'S ENGLISH OF SHAKESPEARE.

(SEVENTH PAGE.)

GINN BROTHERS & CO., Publishers,
18 Beacon Street, Boston.

CLARK & MAYNARD New York.
FRED B. GINN 111 State Street, Chicago, Ill.
SOWER, BARNES, & POTTS Philadelphia, Pa.
A. L. BANCROFT & CO. San Francisco, Cal.
J. P. MORTON & CO Louisville, Ky.
STEVENS & SEYMOUR New Orleans, La.
E. P. GRAY St. Louis, Mo.

Just Published (March, 1870),

MADVIG'S LATIN GRAMMAR.

CAREFULLY REVISED BY THOMAS A. THACHER, YALE COLLEGE.

The most complete and valuable Treatise on the language yet published, and admirably adapted to the wants of Teachers and College Classes. Price to Teachers, \$2.30.

From the Preface to Prof. GOODWIN'S Greek Moods and Tenses.

I can hardly express my great indebtedness to Madvig. The works of this eminent scholar have aided me not only by the material which they have afforded, as a basis for the present work, but also by the valuable suggestions with which they abound.

From Prof. E. P. CROWELL.

AMHERST COLLEGE, Feb. 28, 1870.

GENTLEMEN, — The copy of Madvig's "Latin Grammar" you sent me is received. I enclose the price, and the amount of postage. I shall not fail to commend it most heartily to my students at an early day.

From Prof. CHARLES SHORT.

COLUMBIA COLLEGE, KY., March 22, 1870.

Professor Madvig is known as one of the greatest of living classical scholars, — great in Greek as well as in Latin. His "Greek Syntax" I have often used and, always with great advantage. His "Latin Grammar" had been among my books of reference for several years in the translation of Mr. Wood, of Oxford, and I was glad to find, last autumn, so exact a scholar as my friend Professor Thacher engaged in revising this translation, and in incorporating into it the subsequent improvements of the author. It has been published by Messrs. Ginn Brothers & Co., of Boston; and we congratulate American teachers and students that they can now procure this valuable work in as handsome a form as the Oxford edition, in an enlarged and improved state, and that at one-third of the English price.

GOODWIN'S ELEMENTARY GREEK GRAMMAR.

By WILLIAM W. GOODWIN, Ph.D.,

Lilot Professor of Greek Literature in Harvard University.

To be issued in September.

The publishers are authorized to state that this Grammar will be a new work, not an abridgment of a larger book ; that its aim will be to state clearly and distinctly the *general principles* of the Greek language, with special regard to those who are preparing for college ; and that it will contain the amount of grammatical knowledge which (in the opinion of the author) ought to be required of students *before they enter college*. In the chapter on the Moods will be stated, for the first time in an elementary form, the principles which are elaborated in detail in the author's "Syntax of the Greek Moods and Tenses," by which it is hoped that this part of the work will be made at once more intelligible and more accurate than it has usually been made in elementary grammars.

Greek Lessons and Reader in Preparation.

THE LATIN VERB, ILLUSTRATED BY THE SANSKRIT.

By PROF. C. H. PARKHURST.

Price, 50 cents.

From MARSHALL HENSHAW, LL.D.

Replete with interesting and valuable matter.

From Prof. J. H. SEELYE, Amherst College.

I have great pleasure in expressing my admiration of the work and conviction that it will be highly valued and widely used by classical teachers and pupils.

From Prof. J. B. GREENOUGH, of Harvard University.

It contains in a cheap, convenient, and well arranged form, information which no one at the present day who teaches Latin can well do without.

HUDSON'S

SCHOOL SHAKESPEARE.

THIS volume contains eight plays of Shakespeare, specially selected and prepared for use in Schools, Clubs, Classes, and Families. The plays selected are as follows :—

AS YOU LIKE IT,
THE MERCHANT OF VENICE,
TWELFTH NIGHT,
FIRST AND SECOND PARTS OF KING HENRY THE FOURTH,
KING HENRY THE FIFTH,
JULIUS CÆSAR, AND
HAMLET.

In all cases whole plays are given, with the bare omission of such lines and expressions as are not pronounceable in class. On the other hand, nothing is meant to be retained that is at all unbecoming the intercourse of teacher and pupils. The annotation, all in the form of foot-notes, is such as the Editor, on a long experience in teaching Shakespeare, has found needful, in order to a fair elucidation of the Poet's lines and language and allusions. Each play has an Introduction, giving such items of information, and such points of criticism, as it seems desirable that young students should have before them. Both the text and the annotation are set forth with the utmost care and exactness; the workmanship in these respects being the very best that the Editor can do, after more than thirty years' study of the Poet. This volume, which is designed for a first year's course in Shakespeare, is to be followed by a second, containing such plays as are judged fittest for a second year's course; the selection of plays being made on the strength of a large experience in the use of Shakespeare as a text-book. The Editor has long felt the need of such a preparation in his own teaching, and he thinks the work will be found to meet a general and growing want.

Boston, July, 1870.

LIST OF BOOKS

PUBLISHED BY

GINN BROTHERS AND COMPANY,

13, Beacon Street, Boston.

Wholesale and Retail Prices. Terms: Cash in Thirty Days.

ALLEN'S LATIN GRAMMAR. Prepared by W. F. Wholesale. Retail.
and J. H. ALLEN. 12mo, 148 pages, with Index \$1.00 1.25

The first edition of this Grammar was published in August, 1868; the fifth edition, thoroughly revised, with the addition of full Tables of Inflection, in 1869. It is believed to be sufficiently complete for all the needs of the ordinary student of Latin.

Recommended by Harvard College as indicating the amount required for Admission.

ALLEN'S LATIN LESSONS. 12mo. 134 pages . . 1.00 1.25

Consisting of a carefully prepared Method of Instruction and course of Exercises, on the basis of Cæsar, followed by half the First Book of the Gallic War, and exercises in Prosody; with Notes and Vocabulary.

N.B.—When used in commencing a course of Latin Study, the Grammar and Lessons should be used together.

KEY TO ALLEN'S LATIN LESSONS. For teachers		
only25	.80

ALLEN'S LATIN READER. 12mo. 518 pages . . 2.00 2.50

Consisting of Selections from Phædrus, Cæsar, Curtius, Nepos, Sallust, Ovid, Virgil, Plautus, Terence, Cicero, Pliny, and Tacitus, with Notes and a General Vocabulary of Latin of more than 18,000 words. With references to Allen's, Harkness's, Madvig's, Bullion's, and Andrews and Stoddard's Latin Grammars.

ALLEN'S LATIN LEXICON. 12mo. 205 pages . . 1.00 1.25

Containing about 16,000 words of common use, besides more than 1,300 proper names or adjectives, and about 200 dates, covering the more important points of classical history and mythology.

ALLEN'S LATIN SELECTIONS Wholesale. Retail.
\$1.25 1.50

The same as the Latin Reader, without the Vocabulary.

ALLEN'S LATIN PRIMER. A First Book of Latin
for Boys and Girls. By J. H. ALLEN. 155 pages. 1.00 1.25

This is designed for the use of scholars of a younger class; and consists of thirty lessons, carefully arranged (an adaptation of the Robertsonian method), so as to give a full outline of the Grammar, accompanied by Tables of Inflection; with Dialogues (Latin and English), and selections for reading.

PART I, in strong paper covers87 .50

TABLES OF LATIN INFLECTIONS, 10 cts. single; 75 cents per dozen.

ALLEN'S LATIN COMPOSITION. With references
to other Grammars 1.00 1.25

KEY TO ALLEN'S LATIN COMPOSITION. For
Teachers only50

MADVIG'S LATIN GRAMMAR. Carefully revised by
THOMAS A. THACHER, Yale College 2.50 3.00

The most complete and valuable Treatise on the language yet published, and admirably adapted to the wants of Teachers and College Classes.

CRAIK'S ENGLISH OF SHAKESPEARE. Illustrated
in a Philological Commentary on his Julius Cæsar, by GEORGE
L. CRAIK, Queen's College, Belfast. Edited by W. J. ROLFE,
Cambridge 1.50 1.75

OUR WORLD; OR, FIRST LESSONS IN GEOGRAPHY.
Revised edition, with new Maps, by MARY L. HALL75 .90

THE ATLANTIC PRIMARY ARITHMETIC. By
G. L. DEMAREST40 .50

THE LATIN VERB. Illustrated by the Sanskrit. By
C. H. PARKHURST40 .50

IN PRESS.

HUDSON'S SCHOOL SHAKESPEARE 1.50 2.00

GOODWIN'S ELEMENTARY GREEK GRAMMAR.
(To be issued in September.) 1.00 1.25

**OUR WORLD, No. II.; OR, GRAMMAR SCHOOL GEOG-
RAPHY.** By MARY L. HALL. In preparation.

CRAIK'S ENGLISH OF SHAKESPEARE.

A Book for every Student of Shakespeare or of English.

From the Harvard Catalogue for 1869-70.

For 1870, students may prepare themselves in Craik's "English of Shakespeare" or in Milton's "Comus."

THIRD AMERICAN EDITION, REVISED.

The student of Shakespeare should begin by mastering the English of Shakespeare. This he can best do by the study of this book, which is the most complete commentary ever written on any one of the plays. It contains, also, many illustrative references to the other plays, which render it a valuable aid to the reading of all of them. It is at once an *introduction and a companion to every edition of Shakespeare.*

The following are extracts from a few of the recommendations this work has received :—

From the North-American Review.

The philological commentary is the fullest discussion yet given to the language of any of Shakespeare's plays. . . . The work of the American editor is admirably done throughout. The additional illustrations are numerous; they are always pertinent and interesting, and they show scholarship of the right sort. The omissions are well judged. Many errors and careless remarks are deleted. Where notes are rewritten, they are clearer and briefer.

From Prof. F. J. Child, of Harvard College.

Craik's "English of Shakespeare" is an excellent work, and has received many improvements from Mr. Rolfe. There is no book of its dimensions that I know of, out of which so much may be learned about the English language. . . . It is one of the only two or three books which are both fit to be used, and within the means of students.

From S. H. Taylor, LL.D., Principal of Phillips Academy, Andover, Mass.

It would be of great service to the young, if the work were introduced as a text-book in all our High Schools and Academies. The philological study of the English language has been too much neglected; the right use of this book will be found one of the best means of remedying this defect.

FROM THE NEW-YORK TABLET.

ALLEN'S LATIN COURSE.

This school course of Latin will, we think, be favorably received in our schools and colleges. It is undoubtedly one of the very best rudimental courses yet published in America. The Primer and Lessons are excellent primary books, and the Grammar is also admirably adapted to facilitate the study of the noblest of languages, living or dead. The Reader is, as may be seen from the names of the authors given in the title, a judicious selection of choice extracts from the very best Latin classics. Altogether, we can safely recommend Allen's Course, whether for schools or colleges.

MADVIG'S LATIN GRAMMAR.

This large and complete Grammar will be found well adapted to more advanced classes of Latin students. It is, perhaps, the fullest, and most profound Latin Grammar yet published in this country. It presents a radical and analytical study of the great and perfect language which is the medium of learned communication between all the nations of the Western World.

CRAIK'S ENGLISH OF SHAKESPEARE.

This work is one of rare value to the students of philology, in particular, and to the learned in general. It displays much patient research, careful investigation, and earnest thought. People of cultivated taste will wish to have such a book for reference; they will read it too with pleasure as a learned treatise on what was not only the "English of Shakespeare," but of the Elizabethan Age.

OUR WORLD.

This is an excellent Geography for children; it has in it nothing of the dryness or tedium that is so trying to young beginners in geography, as in other branches of knowledge. The aim of the accomplished author is evidently to impart as much knowledge as she can in the way most attractive to children. Her Geography may be called, and really is, a popularized geography for children. The maps and illustrations are in very good taste.

A L L E N'S

LATIN GRAMMAR, LESSONS, AND READER.

NOTICE.— *The Latin Reader of this course having been adopted at Exeter and elsewhere as an equivalent for Cæsar, the publication of Cæsar's Civil War, heretofore announced, will be postponed.*

From Professor WHITNEY, of Yale College.

NEW HAVEN, NOV. 4, 1868.

We are very favorably impressed here by Professor Allen's work, and, as you will see in the College Catalogue, when it appears, have taken it as the standard for the knowledge of Latin grammar which shall be expected of those who present themselves for entrance to the Sheffield Scientific School. My confidence in the learning and the spirit of its authors is very high.

From Professor MAGILL, of Swarthmore College, Pa.

This unpretending, yet most excellent little book, well mastered, will make far more accurate and thorough Latin scholars than the painful and discouraging study of the more voluminous grammars in common use. Among so much that is excellent it is difficult to particularize; but I may mention the condensed view of the conjugations of the verbs; the truly philosophical treatment of the subjunctive, and the article on the quantity of penultimate syllables.

It gave me great satisfaction to find several subjects abridged and presented in almost the identical form which I found it necessary to adopt for years in the practical work of the class-room.

From HENRY F. MUNROE, *of the High School, Chicago*

CHICAGO, March 18, 1870.

Let me express my hearty approbation of these little volumes, and my entire satisfaction with the practical trial I have given them. My class is very large, comprising the entire Junior Class in the High School, numbering nearly 120 pupils. So you will perceive that I must have all grades of ability, and that no particular portion of the books has been marked by difficulties peculiar to itself, since the studious portion of the class advances quite smoothly from one subject to another, and those of lower ability needed as much instruction in simple lessons as in the more difficult.

At first, the seemingly indiscriminate use of prepositions was a great obstacle in the way of our progress. But as the pupil was taught by your well-arranged Exercises to distinguish between the relations expressed by case-endings, and those expressed by prepositions, the trouble gradually disappeared.

Candidly, I do not think that you would be a gainer by making any great change in either of your books. You have followed out all the salient points in the elementary study of Latin; and after a few paradigms have been thoroughly mastered, the Lessons become, with me at least, the chief book. The grammatical relations are all so well provided for in the Exercises, that very little "Gerund grinding" is needed from the Grammar. I think that the books are excellent as they are; but if any change should be made, it seems to me that even less Grammar, if possible, should be given, and more copious exercises, involving as far as was practicable the use of complete sentences instead of phrases.

From S. H. TAYLOR, *Andover.*

ANDOVER, Sept. 1, 1868.

It contains all the general principles of the language, clearly and concisely stated, and is sufficiently full to meet the ordinary wants of the pupil in the early part of his course. I am glad to see a Latin Grammar in so compact, and yet so complete, a form. It is very happily adapted to smooth the path of the pupil in the study of the Latin language.

From the Nation.

ALLEN'S LATIN GRAMMAR MANUAL.—At a time when classical studies have been assailed rigorously as, at best, involving an unprofitable use of time, the text-books in mathematics and the physical sciences, and even in the modern languages, have become excellent in plan and arrangement, while the Latin and Greek grammars have been neither well-arranged nor correct, and far, indeed, from being interesting; and classical studies have suffered seriously from the bad text-books from which they have had to be pursued.

The book before us seems to us the first successful attempt to remedy the difficulties we have indicated. The Messrs. Allen have begun by rejecting courageously a great deal of information contained in the old grammars which is unnecessary for beginners, including some things which the more advanced Latin scholars must know; but the book, as they take pains to say in their preface, is intended for learners, not for teachers, and the latter must look elsewhere for information upon the nicer points of the language.

Grammar is, after all, a somewhat abstruse science, and the attempt to simplify its language is, therefore, difficult; but we think that all must admit that the Messrs. Allen have been very fortunate, and certainly far more successful than any of their predecessors.

They deserve the thanks, not only of beginners, but of all Latin scholars, for doing so much to clear up the subject of the subjunctive mood, which other grammarians have made a very slough of despond, in which many a journey to the land of classical learning when well begun has prematurely ended.

From Prof. KENDRICK, Rochester University.

ROCHESTER, Nov. 10, 1869.

DEAR SIR, — Will you pardon my delay in acknowledging the in every way admirable and elegant "Latin Reader," by Messrs. Allen, which you had the kindness to send me. It is quite unique, and in its selections, notes, vocabulary, and typographical execution, seems equally excellent.

From President WHITE, of Cornell University, Ithaca, N.Y.

ITHACA, N.Y., Sept. 5, 1868.

Accept my sincere thanks for your "Latin Grammar." It gives some hope for classical scholarship. I have been long convinced that the most dangerous foes of classical studies are not the men who decry them, — the Philistines, — but the men who smother them, — the Pedants. If

classical scholarship shall ever be utterly neglected among us, it will be because those appointed to promote it, have substituted for the great works of the great minds of antiquity, endless gerund-grinding and second-hand scraps of doubtful philosophy, and metaphysics of the subjunctive mood.

Modern grammarians have become generally so long and so dreary, that there is *no time* for ancient authors.

I renew my thanks to you and to your brother for making the study of Cicero and Tacitus and Erasmus again possible, by giving us a sufficient grammar, short and to the point.

From Prof. A. H. THOMPSON, Principal Consolidated High and Putnam Schools.

NEWBURYPORT, Jan. 12, 1870.

So far as I have observed, the "Latin Grammar" and "Lessons" of Messrs. Allen have stood the test of the class-room admirably. Soon after the appearance of these books, several young men who, less than six months before, had commenced the study of Latin in them, entered a class in Cicero then under my instruction; and I may say, I have never known equal attainment made by the same number of pupils in so short a time.

These books are complements of each other; and if studied together will be found to set forth the principles of the language in a clear, concise, and comprehensive manner.

From EDWARD S. BUNKER, Brooklyn.

MANSFIELD ACADEMY,

BROOKLYN, Feb. 9, 1870.

TO THE PUBLISHERS OF ALLEN'S LATIN SERIES.

SIR, — It is not my custom to write recommendatory letters, but if I had the ear of my agent-pestered brethren, I should say: "Gentlemen, here is a thing that seldom gladdens our eyes nowadays: a set of books, fresh, yet scholarly; thoroughly alive, yet delightfully free from nonsense; full and exact, yet so winnowed of rubbish as to be quite small in volume; in brief, a series of handsome, systematic, usable books; and the crowning wonder is, that the publisher sent them to me, and never afterwards solicited an order. We have used them in our classes for the past semester, and we like them better every day. I have no acquaintance with author or publisher, and I have every reason to think that my judgment — whatever its value — is unbiassed."

I heartily thank you for putting such books within our reach.

